LECTURE NOTES
6

Ray W. Ogden

# Nonlinear Elasticity with Application to Material Modelling 



Centre of Excellence for Advanced Materials and Structures

Warsaw 2003

© Copyright by | Institute of Fundamental Technological Research |
| :--- | :--- |
| Polish Academy of Sciences |

## AMAS LECTURE NOTES

## Series Editors:

Executive Committee of AMAS:
Zenon Mróz (Scientific Coordinator)
Krzysztof Doliński
Wojciech Nowacki
Henryk Petryk
Andrzej Siemaszko
Kazimierz Sobczyk

## Executive Editor:

Józef Joachim Telega

Edition of this volume has been partially supported
by the European Commission

Published and distributed by Institute of Fundamental Technological Research Świętokrzyska 21, 00-049 Warszawa, Poland

ISSN 1642-0578

Papier offset. kl. III, 70 g , B1
Ark. wyd.: 10.1; ark. druk.: 8.5
Skład w systemie $\mathrm{EAT}_{\mathrm{E}} \mathrm{X}$ : T.G. Zieliński
Oddano do druku: II 2003; druk ukończono: III 2003
Druk i oprawa: Drukarnia Braci Grodzickich, Piaseczno, ul. Geodetów 47a

## Contents

Preface ..... 7

1. Kinematics ..... 9
1.1. Bodies, configurations and motions ..... 9
1.2. The material time derivative ..... 11
1.3. Differentiation of Cartesian tensor fields ..... 12
1.4. Deformation and velocity gradients ..... 13
1.5. Deformation of area and volume elements ..... 16
1.6. Some results from tensor algebra ..... 18
1.6.1. The square root theorem ..... 18
1.6.2. The polar decomposition theorem ..... 18
1.7. Analysis of deformation ..... 19
1.7.1. Stretch, extension, shear and strain ..... 19
1.7.2. Homogeneous deformations ..... 22
1.8. Analysis of motion ..... 24
1.8.1. Stretching and spin ..... 26
1.9. Integration of tensors ..... 27
1.10. Transport formulas ..... 28
2. Balance laws and equations of motion ..... 31
2.1. Mass ..... 31
2.2. Mass conservation ..... 32
2.3. Force, torque and momentum ..... 33
2.3.1. Body and surface forces ..... 33
2.3.2. Momentum and angular momentum ..... 34
2.4. Euler's laws of motion ..... 34
2.5. The theory of stress ..... 35
2.5.1. Cauchy's theorem ..... 35
2.5.2. Normal and shear stresses ..... 39
2.6. Energy ..... 39
2.7. Stress tensors ..... 41
3. Constitutive equations ..... 45
3.1. Introduction ..... 45
3.2. Elastic materials ..... 46
3.3. Objectivity ..... 46
3.4. Material symmetry ..... 49
3.4.1. Important example: isotropy ..... 50
3.4.2. Noll's rule ..... 51
3.5. Isotropic functions of a second-order tensor ..... 51
3.6. Isotropic elasticity ..... 55
3.7. Hyperelastic materials ..... 56
4. Stress-deformation relations for an isotropic material ..... 61
4.1. Unconstrained materials ..... 61
4.2. Stress-deformation relations in terms of invariants ..... 63
4.2.1. The invariants $I_{1}, I_{2}, I_{3}$ ..... 63
4.2.2. The invariants $i_{1}, i_{2}, i_{3}$ ..... 64
5. Constrained elastic materials ..... 67
5.1. Incompressibility ..... 67
5.2. Stress-deformation relations ..... 69
5.2.1. Invariants $I_{1}, I_{2}$ ..... 69
5.2.2. Invariants $i_{1}, i_{2}$ ..... 69
5.3. Other constraints ..... 69
5.4. Examples of strain-energy functions ..... 70
5.4.1. Use of the invariants $I_{1}, I_{2}$ ..... 71
5.4.2. Use of the invariants $i_{1}, i_{2}$ ..... 71
5.4.3. Use of the stretches ..... 71
5.5. Application to homogeneous deformations ..... 72
5.6. Comparison of theory and experiment for rubber ..... 74
5.6.1. Simple shear ..... 78
6. Boundary-value problems ..... 81
6.1. Extension and inflation of a thick-walled tube ..... 82
7. Anisotropic elastic materials ..... 87
7.1. Transverse isotropy ..... 88
7.1.1. Application to pure homogeneous deformation ..... 89
7.1.2. Plane strain ..... 91
7.2. Two preferred directions ..... 92
7.2.1. Pure homogeneous strain ..... 93
7.2.2. Simple shear ..... 95
7.2.3. Extension and inflation of a thick-walled tube ..... 96
8. The effect of residual stress on elastic response ..... 101
8.1. Elastic response in the presence of residual stress ..... 101
8.1.1. Isotropy ..... 103
8.1.2. Transverse isotropy ..... 104
8.1.3. Orthotropy ..... 104
8.2. Change in reference configuration and strain energy ..... 105
9. Application to arterial tissue ..... 107
9.1. Extension and inflation of a thick-walled tube ..... 108
9.2. The opening angle method ..... 111
9.3. Uniform circumferential stress ..... 115
10.Boundary-value problems: some exact solutions ..... 119
10.1. The azimuthal shear problem ..... 119
10.2. Pure azimuthal shear ..... 122
10.3. Solutions for a class of strain-energy functions ..... 124
10.4. Strain-energy functions in terms of $i_{1}, i_{2}, i_{3}$ ..... 128
10.5. Use of the stretches ..... 130
10.6. The incompressible problem ..... 131
Bibliography ..... 133

## Preface

This volume contains the text of 12 lectures given between March and May 2002 at the Centre of Excellence for Advanced Materials and Structures in the Institute of Fundamental Technological Research, Polish Academy of Sciences, Warsaw. It begins by summarizing the main ingredients of the theory of elasticity, including a description of the kinematics of deformation and the associated deformation and strain tensors, a summary of the equations governing the motion of a continuum and a discussion of the various stress tensors used in the analysis. This discussion is followed by a description of constitutive laws for elastic materials, with reference to restrictions placed on the form of the constitutive law by the requirements of objectivity and material symmetry. Internal constraints are also discussed. Particular attention is focussed on the special case of isotropy since this is important in applications to many materials, including rubberlike materials, and on the incompressibility constraint. Some illustrative boundary-value problems involving homogeneous or non-homogeneous deformations are examined in detail. Some aspects of the application of the theory to the characterization of the elastic properties rubberlike solids are then reviewed.

The constitutive theory next concentrates on applications to the modelling of fibre-reinforced materials. The cases of one and two families of fibres are considered separately. Fibre reinforcement is particularly important in soft biological tissues (for example, arteries), where the fibres typically are in the form of collagen, and some discussion of this area of application is included. Again, some simple boundary-value problems are examined, but, additionally, the effect of residual stresses is also included since these have a critical influence on the response of tissues under both typical and abnormal physiological conditions.

Finally, a detailed analysis is given of a representative boundary-value problem for compressible isotropic elastic materials in order to illustrate how
forms of strain-energy function may be generated by making assumptions on the kinematics. In this case the problem of azimuthal shear of a thickwalled circular cylindrical tube is examined under the assumption that the deformation is isochoric.

There are many general texts that can be referred to for more details of the material in Chapters 1-3 and parts of the other chapters. We mention here, for example, the books by Chadwick [1], Ciarlet [2], Holzapfel [8] and Ogden [18]. Many other references can be found in these works and for the most part we do not therefore give detailed lists of references. We mention here, however, the recent volume by Fu and Ogden [4], which contains several review articles on different aspects of nonlinear elasticity and many references to the original literature. A number of specific references are given in the later chapters in order to provide pointers to the literature that might not otherwise be readily available.

I would like to express my appreciation to Professors Włodzimierz Domański, Witold Kosiński, Zenon Mróz, Zbigniew Olesiak, Kazimierz Sobczyk, J. Joachim Telega, and Henryk Zorski for their kindness and hospitality during my visit to Warsaw. To my host, Professor Henryk Petryk, I am especially grateful, for he contributed so much to making my two-month visit very enjoyable and stimulating.

Glasgow, January 2003
Ray Ogden

## Chapter 1

## Kinematics

### 1.1. Bodies, configurations and motions

Definition. A body $\mathcal{B}$ is a set whose elements can be put into one-toone correspondence with points of a region $B$ in three-dimensional Euclidean point space. The elements of $\mathcal{B}$ are called particles (or material points) and $B$ is called a configuration of $\mathcal{B}$.

As the body moves the configuration changes with time. Let $t \in I \subset \mathbb{R}$ denote time, where $I$ is an interval in $\mathbb{R}$. If, with each $t \in I$, we associate a unique configuration $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ of $\mathcal{B}$ then the family of configurations $\left\{\mathrm{B}_{t}: t \in I\right\}$ is called a motion of $\mathcal{B}$. We assume that as $\mathcal{B}$ moves continuously then $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ changes continuously.

It is convenient to identify a reference configuration, $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ say, which is an arbitrarily chosen fixed configuration. Then, any particle $P$ of $\mathcal{B}$ may be labelled by its position vector $\mathbf{X}$ in $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ relative to some origin $O$. Let $\mathbf{x}$ be the position vector of $P$ in the configuration $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ at time $t$ relative to an origin $o$ (which need not coincide with $O$ ), as depicted in Fig. 1.1.

We say that $\mathcal{B}$ occupies the configuration $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ at time $t-\mathrm{B}_{t}$ is also referred to as the current configuration. Note that $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ need not be a configuration actually occupied by $\mathcal{B}$ during the motion, but is often chosen to be the configuration occupied by $\mathcal{B}$ at some prescribed time.

Since $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ and $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ are configurations of $\mathcal{B}$ there exists a bijection mapping $\chi: \mathrm{B}_{r} \rightarrow \mathrm{~B}_{t}$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{x}=\chi(\mathbf{X}) \quad \text { for all } \mathbf{X} \in \mathrm{B}_{r}, \quad \mathbf{X}=\chi^{-1}(\mathbf{x}) \quad \text { for all } \mathbf{x} \in \mathrm{B}_{t} \tag{1.1}
\end{equation*}
$$



Figure 1.1. Reference configuration $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ and current configuration $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ with position vectors $\mathbf{X}$ and $\mathbf{x}$ of a material point $P$.

The mapping $\chi$ is called the deformation of the body from $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ to $\mathrm{B}_{t}$. Since $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ depends on $t$ we write

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{x}=\chi_{t}(\mathbf{X}), \quad \mathbf{X}=\chi_{t}^{-1}(\mathbf{x}) \tag{1.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

instead of (1.1), or

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{x}=\chi(\mathbf{X}, t) \text { for all } \mathbf{X} \in \mathrm{B}_{r}, t \in I . \tag{1.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

For each particle $P$ (with label $\mathbf{X}$ ) this describes the motion of $P$ with $t$ as parameter, and hence the motion of $\mathcal{B}$. It is usual to assume that $\chi(\mathbf{X}, t)$ is twice-continuously differentiable with respect to position and time, although there are situations where this requirement needs to be relaxed. For example, across a phase boundary where one or more of the first or second derivatives of $\chi$ is discontinuous.

Example: Rigid motion
A motion is said to be rigid if the distance between any two particles of $\mathcal{B}$ does not change during the motion.

The motion defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{x} \equiv \boldsymbol{\chi}(\mathbf{X}, t)=\mathbf{c}(t)+\mathbf{Q}(t) \mathbf{X}, \tag{1.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathbf{c}(t)$ is a vector and $\mathbf{Q}(t)$ is a proper orthogonal second-order tensor, is a rigid motion. To show this we consider $\mathbf{Y} \in \mathrm{B}_{r}$ so that $\mathbf{y}=\mathbf{c}(t)+\mathbf{Q}(t) \mathbf{Y}$.

Then

$$
\begin{align*}
|\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{y}|^{2} & =(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{y}) \cdot(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{y})=[\mathbf{Q}(\mathbf{X}-\mathbf{Y})] \cdot[\mathbf{Q}(\mathbf{X}-\mathbf{Y})] \\
& =\left[\mathbf{Q}^{T} \mathbf{Q}(\mathbf{X}-\mathbf{Y})\right] \cdot(\mathbf{X}-\mathbf{Y})=(\mathbf{X}-\mathbf{Y}) \cdot(\mathbf{X}-\mathbf{Y}) \\
& =|\mathbf{X}-\mathbf{Y}|^{2}, \tag{1.5}
\end{align*}
$$

where we have used $\mathbf{Q}^{T} \mathbf{Q}=\mathbf{I}$. In fact, although we have not proved it here, every rigid motion can be expressed in the form (1.4). Note that $\mathbf{c}(t)$ represents a translation and $\mathbf{Q}(t)$ a rotation.

In the development of the basic principles of continuum mechanics a body $\mathcal{B}$ is endowed with various physical properties which are represented by scalar, vector and tensor fields defined on either $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ or $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ (for example, density, temperature, shape of surface, velocity, strain). In the case of $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ the position vector $\mathbf{X}$ and time $t$ serve as independent variables, and the fields are then said to be defined in terms of the referential or material description. Alternatively, in the case of $\mathrm{B}_{t}, \mathbf{x}$ and $t$ are used and the description is said to be spatial. The terminologies Lagrangian and Eulerian descriptions are also used in respect of $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ and $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ respectively.

Rectangular Cartesian coordinate systems with basis vectors $\left\{\mathbf{E}_{i}\right\}$ and $\left\{\mathbf{e}_{i}\right\}$ are chosen for $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ and $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ respectively, with material coordinates $X_{i}$ and spatial coordinates $x_{i}(i=1,2,3)$. Thus, relative to the origins $O$ and $o$ respectively, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{X}=X_{i} \mathbf{E}_{i}, \quad \mathbf{x}=x_{i} \mathbf{e}_{i} . \tag{1.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

In (1.6) the summation convention over repeated indices applies. It will also apply henceforth except where stated otherwise. In general, $\mathbf{E}_{i}$ and $\mathbf{e}_{i}$ may be chosen to have different orientations, but it is often convenient to let them coincide.

### 1.2. The material time derivative

The velocity $\mathbf{v}$ of a particle $P$ is defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{v} \equiv \dot{\mathbf{x}}=\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \chi(\mathbf{X}, t) \tag{1.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

i.e. the rate of change of position of $P$ (or $\partial / \partial t$ at fixed $\mathbf{X}$ ). The acceleration a of $P$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{a} \equiv \dot{\mathbf{v}} \equiv \ddot{\mathbf{x}}=\frac{\partial^{2}}{\partial t^{2}} \chi(\mathbf{X}, t) . \tag{1.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

In each case a superposed dot indicates differentiation with respect to $t$ at fixed $\mathbf{X}$.

Let $\phi$ be a scalar field defined on $\mathrm{B}_{t}$, i.e. $\phi(\mathbf{x}, t)$. Since $\mathbf{x}=\chi(\mathbf{X}, t)$, we may write

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi(\mathbf{x}, t)=\phi[\chi(\mathbf{X}, t), t] \equiv \Phi(\mathbf{X}, t) \tag{1.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

which defines the notation $\Phi$. Thus, any field defined on $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ (respectively $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ ) can, through (1.2) or its inverse, equally be defined on $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ (respectively $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ ).

The material derivative of $\phi$ is the rate of change of $\phi$ at fixed material point $P$, i.e. at fixed $\mathbf{X}$. We write the material derivative as $\dot{\phi}$ or $D \phi / D t$.

By definition, we have

$$
\dot{\phi}=\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Phi(\mathbf{X}, t)
$$

and by the chain rule for partial derivatives we then obtain

$$
\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Phi(\mathbf{X}, t)=\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \phi(\mathbf{x}, t)+\frac{\partial x_{i}}{\partial t} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{i}} \phi(\mathbf{x}, t)=\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \phi(\mathbf{x}, t)+\frac{\partial \mathbf{x}}{\partial t} \cdot \nabla \phi(\mathbf{x}, t),
$$

where $\nabla$ denotes the gradient operator with respect to $\mathbf{x}$. Using (1.7) we thus have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\underbrace{\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \Phi(\mathbf{X}, t)}_{\text {material description }} \equiv \dot{\phi}=\underbrace{\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \phi+\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla \phi}_{\text {spatial description }} \tag{1.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Similarly, for a vector field

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{u}(\mathbf{x}, t)=\mathbf{u}[\boldsymbol{\chi}(\mathbf{X}, t), t]=\mathbf{U}(\mathbf{X}, t) \tag{1.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

wherein $\mathbf{U}$ is defined, we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \mathbf{U}(\mathbf{X}, t) \equiv \dot{\mathbf{u}}=\frac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial t}+(\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{u} \tag{1.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

In particular, the acceleration $\mathbf{a}=\dot{\mathbf{v}}$ is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{a}=\dot{\mathbf{v}}=\frac{\partial \mathbf{v}}{\partial t}+(\mathbf{v} \cdot \nabla) \mathbf{v} \tag{1.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 1.3. Differentiation of Cartesian tensor fields

Let $\phi, \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{T}$ be scalar, vector and tensor functions of position $\mathbf{x}$. The operation of the gradient operator, grad or $\nabla$, on these functions with respect to the basis $\left\{\mathbf{e}_{i}\right\}$ is defined as follows:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{grad} \phi \equiv \nabla \phi=\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial x_{i}} \mathbf{e}_{i}, \tag{1.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

$$
\begin{align*}
\operatorname{grad} \mathbf{u} & \equiv \nabla \otimes \mathbf{u}=\frac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial x_{q}} \otimes \mathbf{e}_{q}=\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{q}}\left(u_{p} \mathbf{e}_{p}\right) \otimes \mathbf{e}_{q}=\frac{\partial u_{p}}{\partial x_{q}} \mathbf{e}_{p} \otimes \mathbf{e}_{q},  \tag{1.15}\\
\operatorname{grad} \mathbf{T} & \equiv \nabla \otimes \mathbf{T}=\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{i}} \mathbf{T} \otimes \mathbf{e}_{i}=\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{i}}\left(T_{p q} \mathbf{e}_{p} \otimes \mathbf{e}_{q}\right) \otimes \mathbf{e}_{i}=\frac{\partial T_{p q}}{\partial x_{i}} \mathbf{e}_{p} \otimes \mathbf{e}_{q} \otimes \mathbf{e}_{i}, \tag{1.16}
\end{align*}
$$

and similarly for higher-order tensors. Note that the operation of grad increases the order of the tensor by one. On the other hand, the operation of contraction reduces the order of a tensor by two. For example, grad u contracts to give $\nabla \cdot \mathbf{u}$, so that a second-order tensor reduces to a scalar.

There are several possible contractions of $\nabla \otimes \mathbf{T}$. We define div $\mathbf{T}$ by

$$
\operatorname{div} \mathbf{T} \equiv \frac{\partial T_{p q}}{\partial x_{i}} \mathbf{e}_{q}\left(\mathbf{e}_{p} \cdot \mathbf{e}_{i}\right),
$$

which is the $p-i$ contraction. Since $\mathbf{e}_{p} \cdot \mathbf{e}_{i}=\delta_{i p}$ we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{div} \mathbf{T}=\frac{\partial T_{p q}}{\partial x_{p}} \mathbf{e}_{q} . \tag{1.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the notation defined here we note that (1.12) can be written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{\mathbf{u}}=\frac{\partial \mathbf{u}}{\partial t}+(\nabla \otimes \mathbf{u}) \mathbf{v} . \tag{1.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 1.4. Deformation and velocity gradients

Let Grad, Div, Curl (respectively grad, div, curl) denote the gradient, divergence and curl operators in the reference (respectively current) configuration, i.e. with respect to $\mathbf{X}$ (respectively $\mathbf{x}$ ). Then, we define the deformation gradient tensor $\mathbf{F}$ as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{F}(\mathbf{X}, t)=\operatorname{Grad} \mathbf{x} \equiv \operatorname{Grad} \boldsymbol{\chi}(\mathbf{X}, t) . \tag{1.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

With respect to the chosen basis vectors and with use of (1.15) we have

$$
\mathbf{F}=\frac{\partial}{\partial X_{j}}\left(x_{i} \mathbf{e}_{i}\right) \otimes \mathbf{E}_{j}=\frac{\partial x_{i}}{\partial X_{j}} \mathbf{e}_{i} \otimes \mathbf{E}_{j}
$$

or, in component form,

$$
\begin{equation*}
F_{i j}=\frac{\partial x_{i}}{\partial X_{j}} \tag{1.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $x_{i}=\chi_{i}(\mathbf{X}, t)$.

We assume that $\operatorname{det} \mathbf{F} \neq 0$ (to be justified shortly) so that $\mathbf{F}$ has an inverse $\mathbf{F}^{-1}$, given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{F}^{-1}=\operatorname{grad} \mathbf{X} \tag{1.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

with components

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\mathbf{F}^{-1}\right)_{i j}=\frac{\partial X_{i}}{\partial x_{j}} . \tag{1.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

This may be checked by means of the calculation

$$
\left(\mathbf{F} \mathbf{F}^{-1}\right)_{i j}=F_{i k}\left(\mathbf{F}^{-1}\right)_{k j}=\frac{\partial x_{i}}{\partial X_{k}} \frac{\partial X_{k}}{\partial x_{j}}=\frac{\partial x_{i}}{\partial x_{j}}=\delta_{i j} .
$$

It follows from (1.20) that

$$
F_{i j} d X_{j}=\frac{\partial x_{i}}{\partial X_{j}} d X_{j}=d x_{i}
$$

i.e.

$$
\begin{equation*}
d \mathbf{x}=\mathbf{F} d \mathbf{X} \tag{1.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

which has inverse

$$
\begin{equation*}
d \mathbf{X}=\mathbf{F}^{-1} d \mathbf{x} \tag{1.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

Equation (1.23) describes how small line elements $d \mathbf{X}$ of material at $\mathbf{X}$ transform under the deformation into $d \mathbf{x}$ (which consists of the same material as $d \mathbf{X}$ ) at $\mathbf{x}$. It shows that line elements transform linearly since $\mathbf{F}$ depends on $\mathbf{X}$ (and not on $d \mathbf{X}$ ). Thus, at each $\mathbf{X}, \mathbf{F}$ is a linear mapping (i.e. a second-order tensor).

We justify taking $\mathbf{F}$ to be non-singular $(\operatorname{det} \mathbf{F} \neq 0)$ by noting that $\mathbf{F} d \mathbf{X} \neq$ $\mathbf{0}$ if $d \mathbf{X} \neq \mathbf{0}$, i.e. a line element cannot be annihilated by the deformation process.

## Example

Let $\phi, \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{T}$ respectively be scalar, vector, and second-order tensor fields associated with a moving body. We now establish the following very useful formulas:

$$
\begin{array}{cl}
\operatorname{Grad} \phi=\mathbf{F}^{T} \operatorname{grad} \phi, & \operatorname{Grad} \mathbf{u}=(\operatorname{grad} \mathbf{u}) \mathbf{F} \\
\operatorname{Div} \mathbf{u}=J \operatorname{div}\left(J^{-1} \mathbf{F u}\right), & \operatorname{Div} \mathbf{T}=J \operatorname{div}\left(J^{-1} \mathbf{F T}\right) \tag{1.26}
\end{array}
$$

where $J$ is defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
J=\operatorname{det} \mathbf{F} \tag{1.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

First, we calculate

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{F}^{T} \operatorname{grad} \phi= & \left(\frac{\partial x_{i}}{\partial X_{j}} \mathbf{e}_{i} \otimes \mathbf{E}_{j}\right)^{T} \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial x_{p}} \mathbf{e}_{p}=\frac{\partial x_{i}}{\partial X_{j}}\left(\mathbf{E}_{j} \otimes \mathbf{e}_{i}\right) \mathbf{e}_{p} \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial x_{p}} \\
& =\frac{\partial x_{i}}{\partial X_{j}} \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial x_{p}} \mathbf{E}_{j} \delta_{i p}=\frac{\partial x_{p}}{\partial X_{j}} \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial x_{p}} \mathbf{E}_{j}=\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial X_{j}} \mathbf{E}_{j}=\operatorname{Grad} \phi .
\end{aligned}
$$

Next,

$$
\begin{aligned}
(\operatorname{grad} \mathbf{u}) \mathbf{F} & =\left(\frac{\partial u_{i}}{\partial x_{j}} \mathbf{e}_{i} \otimes \mathbf{e}_{j}\right)\left(\frac{\partial x_{p}}{\partial X_{q}} \mathbf{e}_{p} \otimes \mathbf{E}_{q}\right)=\frac{\partial u_{i}}{\partial x_{j}} \frac{\partial x_{p}}{\partial X_{q}}\left(\mathbf{e}_{i} \otimes \mathbf{e}_{j}\right)\left(\mathbf{e}_{p} \otimes \mathbf{E}_{q}\right) \\
& =\frac{\partial u_{i}}{\partial x_{j}} \frac{\partial x_{p}}{\partial X_{q}} \mathbf{e}_{i} \otimes \mathbf{E}_{q} \delta_{j p}=\frac{\partial u_{i}}{\partial x_{p}} \frac{\partial x_{p}}{\partial X_{q}} \mathbf{e}_{i} \otimes \mathbf{E}_{q}=\frac{\partial u_{i}}{\partial X_{q}} \mathbf{e}_{i} \otimes \mathbf{E}_{q} \\
& =\text { Grad } \mathbf{u} .
\end{aligned}
$$

For the right-hand side of the first equation in (1.26), we calculate

$$
\begin{equation*}
J \operatorname{div}\left(J^{-1} \mathrm{Fu}\right)=J \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{p}}\left(J^{-1} F_{p q} u_{q}\right)=F_{p q} \frac{\partial u_{q}}{\partial x_{p}}+J u_{q} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{p}}\left(J^{-1} F_{p q}\right) . \tag{1.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

But,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{p}}\left(J^{-1} F_{p q}\right)= & \frac{\partial X_{r}}{\partial x_{p}} \frac{\partial}{\partial X_{r}}\left(J^{-1} F_{p q}\right)=-J^{-2} \frac{\partial J}{\partial X_{r}} \frac{\partial X_{r}}{\partial x_{p}} F_{p q}+J^{-1} \frac{\partial X_{r}}{\partial x_{p}} \frac{\partial F_{p q}}{\partial X_{r}} \\
& =-J^{-2}\left(J\left(\mathbf{F}^{-1}\right)_{t s} \frac{\partial F_{s t}}{\partial X_{r}}\right) \underbrace{\frac{\partial X_{r}}{\partial x_{p}} \frac{\partial x_{p}}{\partial X_{q}}}_{\delta_{r q}}+J^{-1} \frac{\partial X_{r}}{\partial x_{p}} \frac{\partial^{2} x_{p}}{\partial X_{q} \partial X_{r}}
\end{aligned}
$$

which requires the formula

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial}{\partial X_{r}}(\operatorname{det} \mathbf{F})=(\operatorname{det} \mathbf{F}) \operatorname{tr}\left(\mathbf{F}^{-1} \frac{\partial \mathbf{F}}{\partial X_{r}}\right) \tag{1.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus,

$$
\frac{\partial}{\partial x_{p}}\left(J^{-1} F_{p q}\right)=-J^{-1} \frac{\partial X_{t}}{\partial x_{s}} \frac{\partial^{2} x_{s}}{\partial X_{q} \partial X_{t}}+J^{-1} \frac{\partial X_{r}}{\partial x_{p}} \frac{\partial^{2} x_{p}}{\partial X_{q} \partial X_{r}}=0 .
$$

Hence, (1.28) gives

$$
J \operatorname{div}\left(J^{-1} \mathbf{F u}\right)=F_{p q} \frac{\partial u_{q}}{\partial x_{p}}=\frac{\partial x_{p}}{\partial X_{q}} \frac{\partial u_{q}}{\partial x_{p}}=\frac{\partial u_{q}}{\partial X_{q}}=\operatorname{Div} \mathbf{u} .
$$

Similarly,

$$
\begin{aligned}
J \operatorname{div}\left(J^{-1} \mathbf{F T}\right) & =J \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{p}}\left(J^{-1} F_{p q} T_{q r} \mathbf{E}_{r}\right) \\
& =\underbrace{J \frac{\partial}{\partial x_{p}}\left(J^{-1} F_{p q}\right) T_{q r} \mathbf{E}_{r}}_{=0}+F_{p q} \frac{\partial T_{q r}}{\partial x_{p}} \mathbf{E}_{r} \\
& =\frac{\partial x_{p}}{\partial X_{q}} \frac{\partial T_{q r}}{\partial x_{p}} \mathbf{E}_{r}=\frac{\partial T_{q r}}{\partial X_{q}} \mathbf{E}_{r}=\operatorname{Div} \mathbf{T} .
\end{aligned}
$$

### 1.5. Deformation of area and volume elements



Figure 1.2. Infinitesimal line elements at $\mathbf{X}$ on the surface $S_{r}$ in the reference configuration $B_{r}$ and their images at $\mathbf{x}$ on the deformed surface $S_{t}$ in the current configuration $\mathrm{B}_{t}$.

Consider a surface $S_{r}$ in $B_{r}$ which deforms into the surface $S_{t}$ in $B_{t}$, as depicted in Fig. 1.2. Let $\mathbf{X}$ be a point on $S_{r}$ and $\mathbf{x}$ the corresponding point on $\mathrm{S}_{t}$. Let $d \mathbf{X}$ and $d \mathbf{X}^{\prime}$ be line elements of material on $\mathrm{S}_{r}$ based at $\mathbf{X}$ with images $d \mathbf{x}$ and $d \mathbf{x}^{\prime}$ on $\mathrm{S}_{t}$ under the deformation. Strictly, the line elements are tangential to the surface and only approximately lie in the surface. If $\mathbf{F}$ denotes the deformation gradient, then

$$
\begin{equation*}
d \mathbf{x}=\mathbf{F} d \mathbf{X}, \quad d \mathbf{x}^{\prime}=\mathbf{F} d \mathbf{X}^{\prime} \tag{1.30}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $d A$ and $d a$ be surface area elements on $S_{r}$ and $\mathrm{S}_{t}$ respectively, and let $\mathbf{N}$ and $\mathbf{n}$ be unit normals at $\mathbf{X}$ and $\mathbf{x}$ respectively. For the parallelogram with sides $d \mathbf{X}, d \mathbf{X}^{\prime}$ we have

$$
\mathbf{N} d A=d \mathbf{X} \times d \mathbf{X}^{\prime} .
$$

Under the deformation this becomes a parallelogram with sides $d \mathbf{x}, d \mathbf{x}^{\prime}$ and area

$$
\mathbf{n} d a=d \mathbf{x} \times d \mathbf{x}^{\prime}
$$

- From (1.30) we obtain

$$
\mathbf{F}^{T} \mathbf{n} d a=\mathbf{F}^{T}\left[(\mathbf{F} d \mathbf{X}) \times\left(\mathbf{F} d \mathbf{X}^{\prime}\right)\right]=(\operatorname{det} \mathbf{F}) d \mathbf{X} \times d \mathbf{X}^{\prime}
$$

Hence

$$
\mathbf{n} d a=J\left(\mathbf{F}^{T}\right)^{-1} \mathbf{N} d A
$$

where $J=\operatorname{det} \mathbf{F}$. With the notation

$$
\mathbf{F}^{-T}=\left(\mathbf{F}^{T}\right)^{-1}=\left(\mathbf{F}^{-1}\right)^{T}
$$

this becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{n} d a=J \mathbf{F}^{-T} \mathbf{N} d A \tag{1.31}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is an important result, known as Nanson's formula, and it describes how elements of surface area deform. It applies to area elements of arbitrary shape, not just the parallelogram considered here

Next, consider the parallelepiped in $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ formed by line elements $d \mathbf{X}, d \mathbf{X}^{\prime}$, $d \mathbf{X}^{\prime \prime}$ at $\mathbf{X}$. Its volume $d V$ is given by

$$
d V=d \mathbf{X} \cdot\left(d \mathbf{X}^{\prime} \times d \mathbf{X}^{\prime \prime}\right)=\operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{lll}
d \mathbf{X} & d \mathbf{X}^{\prime} & d \mathbf{X}^{\prime \prime}
\end{array}\right)
$$

The corresponding volume $d v$ in $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ is

$$
\begin{aligned}
d v & =d \mathbf{x} \cdot\left(d \mathbf{x}^{\prime} \times d \mathbf{x}^{\prime \prime}\right)=\operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{lll}
d \mathbf{x} & d \mathbf{x}^{\prime} & d \mathbf{x}^{\prime \prime}
\end{array}\right) \\
& =\operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{llll}
\mathbf{F} d \mathbf{X} & \mathbf{F} d \mathbf{X}^{\prime} & \mathbf{F} d \mathbf{X}^{\prime \prime}
\end{array}\right)=\operatorname{det}(\mathbf{F}) \operatorname{det}\left(\begin{array}{lll}
d \mathbf{X} & d \mathbf{X}^{\prime} & d \mathbf{X}^{\prime \prime}
\end{array}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

i.e.

$$
\begin{equation*}
d v=J d V \tag{1.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

Recalling that $\mathbf{F}$ is nonsingular, it is appropriate, by convention, to define volume elements to be positive, so that

$$
\begin{equation*}
J \equiv \operatorname{det} \mathbf{F}>0 . \tag{1.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

- From (1.32) we see that $J$ is a measure of the change in volume under the deformation. If the deformation is such that there is no change in volume then the deformation is said to be isochoric, and then

$$
\begin{equation*}
J \equiv \operatorname{det} \mathbf{F}=1 \tag{1.34}
\end{equation*}
$$

For some materials many deformations are such that (1.34) holds to a good approximation, and (1.34) is adopted as an idealization. An (ideal) material for which (1.34) holds for all deformations is called an incompressible material.

In order to analyze further the local nature of the deformation, i.e. of $\mathbf{F}$, we require some properties of second-order tensors.

### 1.6. Some results from tensor algebra

### 1.6.1. The square root theorem

If $\mathbf{S}$ is a positive definite, symmetric second-order tensor then there exists a unique, positive definite, symmetric second-order tensor, $\mathbf{U}$ say, such that $\mathbf{U}^{2}=\mathbf{S}$.

## Proof

Since $\mathbf{S}$ is symmetric we may write it in the spectral form

$$
\mathbf{S}=\sum_{i=1}^{3} s_{i} \mathbf{e}_{i}^{\prime} \otimes \mathbf{e}_{i}^{\prime}
$$

where $s_{i}$ are the (real) eigenvalues of $\mathbf{S}$ and $\left\{\mathbf{e}_{i}^{\prime}\right\}$ are the (unit) eigenvectors. Since $\mathbf{S}$ is positive definite, we have $s_{i}>0$. Now define $\mathbf{U}$ by

$$
\mathbf{U}=\sum_{i=1}^{3} \sqrt{s_{i}} \mathbf{e}_{i}^{\prime} \otimes \mathbf{e}_{i}^{\prime}
$$

Then, $\mathbf{U}$ is positive definite and symmetric and $\mathbf{U}^{2}=\mathbf{S}$, as required. Uniqueness is obvious.

### 1.6.2. The polar decomposition theorem

Let $\mathbf{F}$ be a second-order Cartesian tensor such that $\operatorname{det} \mathbf{F}>0$. Then there exist unique, positive definite, symmetric tensors, $\mathbf{U}$ and $\mathbf{V}$, and a unique proper orthogonal tensor $\mathbf{R}$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{F}=\mathbf{R U}=\mathbf{V R} \tag{1.35}
\end{equation*}
$$

## Proof

The tensors $\mathbf{F F}^{T}$ and $\mathbf{F}^{T} \mathbf{F}$ are symmetric and positive definite. Hence, by the square root theorem, there exist unique positive definite symmetric tensors $\mathbf{U}, \mathbf{V}$ such that

$$
\mathbf{V}^{2}=\mathbf{F F}^{T}, \quad \mathbf{U}^{2}=\mathbf{F}^{T} \mathbf{F}
$$

Now define $\mathbf{R}=\mathbf{F} \mathbf{U}^{-1}$. We need to prove that $\mathbf{R}$ is proper orthogonal. First, we calculate

$$
\mathbf{R}^{T} \mathbf{R}=\left(\mathbf{F} \mathbf{U}^{-1}\right)^{T}\left(\mathbf{F} \mathbf{U}^{-1}\right)=\mathbf{U}^{-1} \mathbf{F}^{T} \mathbf{F} \mathbf{U}^{-1}=\mathbf{U}^{-1} \mathbf{U}^{2} \mathbf{U}^{-1}=\mathbf{I},
$$

and hence we deduce that $\mathbf{R}$ is orthogonal. Second, we calculate

$$
\operatorname{det} \mathbf{R}=\operatorname{det}\left(\mathbf{F} \mathbf{U}^{-1}\right)=(\operatorname{det} \mathbf{F})(\operatorname{det} \mathbf{U})^{-1}>0,
$$

and it follows that $\mathbf{R}$ is proper orthogonal.
Since $\mathbf{U}$ is unique, $\mathbf{R}$ is unique and hence $\mathbf{F}=\mathbf{R U}$. Similarly, $\mathbf{F}=\mathbf{V S}$, where $\mathbf{S}$ is proper orthogonal. Thus,

$$
\mathbf{F}=\mathbf{R U}=\mathbf{V S}=\mathbf{R U R}^{T} \mathbf{R} .
$$

By uniqueness it follows that $\mathbf{S}=\mathbf{R}$ and hence (1.35) holds. Note that $\mathbf{V}=\mathbf{R U R}^{T}$.

Corollary. If $\mathbf{U}$ has eigenvalues $\lambda_{i}$ and eigenvectors $\mathbf{u}^{(i)}, i \in\{1,2,3\}$, then $\lambda_{i}>0$ and $\lambda_{i}$ are also the eigenvalues of $\mathbf{V}$ with eigenvectors $\mathbf{R u}^{(i)}$.

## Proof

It follows from symmetry and from positive definiteness of $\mathbf{U}$ that $\lambda_{i}>0$. Also, we have

$$
\mathbf{V}\left(\mathbf{R} \mathbf{u}^{(i)}\right)=\mathbf{V R} \mathbf{u}^{(i)}=\mathbf{R} \mathbf{U} \mathbf{u}^{(i)}=\mathbf{R}\left(\lambda_{i} \mathbf{u}^{(i)}\right)=\lambda_{i}\left(\mathbf{R} \mathbf{u}^{(i)}\right),
$$

which shows that $\mathbf{R u}{ }^{(i)}$ are the eigenvectors of $\mathbf{V}$.

### 1.7. Analysis of deformation

### 1.7.1. Stretch, extension, shear and strain

Let $\mathbf{M}$ and $\mathbf{m}$ be unit vectors along $d \mathbf{X}$ and $d \mathbf{x}$ respectively, so that $d \mathbf{X}=\mathbf{M}|d \mathbf{X}|, d \mathbf{x}=\mathbf{m}|d \mathbf{x}|$ and (1.23) gives $\mathbf{m}|d \mathbf{x}|=\mathbf{F M}|d \mathbf{X}|$. Thus

$$
\begin{equation*}
|d \mathbf{x}|^{2}=(\mathbf{F M}) \cdot(\mathbf{F M})|d \mathbf{X}|^{2}=\left(\mathbf{F}^{T} \mathbf{F M}\right) \cdot \mathbf{M}|d \mathbf{X}|^{2} \tag{1.36}
\end{equation*}
$$

and hence

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{|d \mathbf{x}|}{|d \mathbf{X}|}=|\mathbf{F M}|=\left[\mathbf{M} \cdot\left(\mathbf{F}^{T} \mathbf{F M}\right)\right]^{1 / 2} \equiv \lambda(\mathbf{M}) \tag{1.37}
\end{equation*}
$$

which defines $\lambda(\mathbf{M})$, called the stretch in the direction $\mathbf{M}$ at $\mathbf{X}$. Note that $0<\lambda(\mathbf{M})<\infty$ for all unit vectors $\mathbf{M}$.

Now consider a pair of line elements $d \mathbf{X}_{1}, d \mathbf{X}_{2}$ based at $\mathbf{X}$, so that

$$
d \mathbf{x}_{1}=\mathbf{F} d \mathbf{X}_{1}, \quad d \mathbf{x}_{2}=\mathbf{F} d \mathbf{X}_{2}
$$

Let $\Theta$ be the angle between them before deformation and $\theta$ the corresponding angle after deformation. Then,

$$
\cos \Theta=\mathbf{M}_{1} \cdot \mathbf{M}_{2}, \quad \cos \theta=\frac{\mathbf{M}_{1} \cdot\left(\mathbf{F}^{T} \mathbf{F} \mathbf{M}_{2}\right)}{\lambda\left(\mathbf{M}_{1}\right) \lambda\left(\mathbf{M}_{2}\right)}
$$

The decrease in angle $\Theta-\theta$ (which may be positive or negative) is called the shear of the direction $\mathbf{M}_{1}, \mathbf{M}_{2}$ in the plane of $\mathbf{M}_{1}, \mathbf{M}_{2}$.

Next, from (1.36), we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
|d \mathbf{x}|^{2}-|d \mathbf{X}|^{2}=d \mathbf{X} \cdot\left(\mathbf{F}^{T} \mathbf{F}-\mathbf{I}\right) d \mathbf{X} \tag{1.38}
\end{equation*}
$$

The material is said to be unstrained at $\mathbf{X}$ if no line element changes length, i.e.

$$
d \mathbf{X} \cdot\left(\mathbf{F}^{T} \mathbf{F}-\mathbf{I}\right) d \mathbf{X}=0 \quad \text { for all } d \mathbf{X}
$$

or, equivalently,

$$
\lambda(\mathbf{M})=1 \quad \text { for all unit vectors } \mathbf{M}
$$

It follows that $\mathbf{F}^{T} \mathbf{F}-\mathbf{I}=\mathbf{O}$, the zero tensor. This allows the possibility that $\mathbf{F}$ is just a rotation $\mathbf{R}$, since, for orthogonal $\mathbf{R}$, we have $\mathbf{R}^{T} \mathbf{R}=\mathbf{I}$.

Strain is measured locally by changes in the lengths of line elements, i.e. by the value of (1.38). Thus, the tensor $\mathbf{F}^{T} \mathbf{F}-\mathbf{I}$ is a measure of strain. The so-called Green strain tensor $\mathbf{E}$ is defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{E}=\frac{1}{2}\left(\mathbf{F}^{T} \mathbf{F}-\mathbf{I}\right) \tag{1.39}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using the polar decomposition (1.35) for the deformation gradient $\mathbf{F}$, we may also form the following tensor measures of deformation:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{C}=\mathbf{F}^{T} \mathbf{F}=\mathbf{U}^{2}, \quad \mathbf{B}=\mathbf{F F}^{T}=\mathbf{V}^{2} \tag{1.40}
\end{equation*}
$$

We refer to $\mathbf{C}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ as the right and left Cauchy-Green deformation tensors respectively. Note that $\mathbf{E}$ may be written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{E}=\frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{C}-\mathbf{I})=\frac{1}{2}\left(\mathbf{U}^{2}-\mathbf{I}\right) . \tag{1.41}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since $\mathbf{U}$ is positive definite and symmetric there exist (unit) eigenvectors $\mathbf{u}^{(i)}$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{U}=\sum_{i=1}^{3} \lambda_{i} \mathbf{u}^{(i)} \otimes \mathbf{u}^{(i)} \tag{1.42}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\lambda_{i}>0$ are the principal stretches of the deformation and $\mathbf{u}^{(i)}$ are the principal directions. Note that, in accordance with the definition (1.37), $\lambda_{i}=\lambda\left(\mathbf{u}^{(i)}\right)$ - hence the terminology principal stretch.

The tensors $\mathbf{U}$ and $\mathbf{V}$ are called the right and left stretch tensors respectively. The deformation $\mathbf{F}$ rotates the principal axes of $\mathbf{U}$ into those of $\mathbf{V}$ as well as stretching along those directions. The principal axes of $\mathbf{U}$ and $\mathbf{V}$ are sometimes referred to as the Lagrangian and Eulerian principal axes respectively.

Other strain tensors based on $\mathbf{U}$ may be defined. For example, we define $\mathbf{E}^{(m)}$ as follows:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathbf{E}^{(m)}=\frac{1}{2}\left(\mathbf{U}^{m}-\mathbf{I}\right) \quad m \neq 0  \tag{1.43}\\
& \mathbf{E}^{(0)}=\ln \mathbf{U} \tag{1.44}
\end{align*}
$$

where $m$ is a real number, not necessarily an integer. These are Lagrangian tensors, all coaxial with $\mathbf{U}$, and have eigenvalues $\left(\lambda_{i}^{m}-1\right) / m$ for $m \neq 0$ and $\ln \lambda_{i}$ for $m=0$. Corresponding Eulerian tensors, here denoted $\mathbf{e}^{(m)}$ and based on $\mathbf{V}$, are defined by

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathbf{e}^{(m)}=\frac{1}{2}\left(\mathbf{V}^{m}-\mathbf{I}\right) \quad m \neq 0  \tag{1.45}\\
& \mathbf{e}^{(0)}=\ln \mathbf{V} \tag{1.46}
\end{align*}
$$

and we note that, on recalling the connection $\mathbf{V}=\mathbf{R U} \mathbf{R}^{T}, \mathbf{e}^{(m)}=\mathbf{R} \mathbf{E}^{(m)} \mathbf{R}^{T}$ for each $m$. Thus, $\mathbf{E}^{(m)}$ and $\mathbf{e}^{(m)}$ have the same eigenvalues.

Finally in this section it is useful to note that the displacement $\mathbf{u}$ of a particle is defined as

$$
\mathbf{u}=\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{X},
$$

so that

$$
\mathbf{x}=\mathbf{X}+\mathbf{u}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{F}=\operatorname{Grad} \mathbf{x}=\mathbf{I}+\operatorname{Grad} \mathbf{u} \tag{1.47}
\end{equation*}
$$

where Grad $\mathbf{u}$ is the displacement gradient (recall that $\operatorname{Grad} \mathbf{X}=\mathbf{I}$, the identity tensor.)

### 1.7.2. Homogeneous deformations

If $\mathbf{F}$ is independent of $\mathbf{X}$ then the deformation is said to be homogeneous (the same at each point of the body). The most general form of homogeneous deformation is given by $\mathbf{x}=\mathbf{F X}+\mathbf{c}$, with $\mathbf{F}$ independent of $\mathbf{X}$ and $\mathbf{c}$ a constant vector. The following examples are all special cases of this.

Simple elongation Consider the uniform axial extension of a solid right circular cylinder (with lateral contraction). For this deformation $\mathbf{F}=\mathbf{U}=\mathbf{V}$ and there is no change in the orientation of the principal axes of $\mathbf{U}$ during the deformation. Let the principal axis $\mathbf{u}^{(1)}$ lie along the cylinder axis and correspond to principal stretch $\lambda_{1}$. Then, since there is symmetry perpendicular to the axis, $\lambda_{2}=\lambda_{3}$ and hence the deformation gradient may be written

$$
\mathbf{F}=\mathbf{U}=\lambda_{1} \mathbf{u}^{(1)} \otimes \mathbf{u}^{(1)}+\lambda_{2}\left(\mathbf{u}^{(2)} \otimes \mathbf{u}^{(2)}+\mathbf{u}^{(3)} \otimes \mathbf{u}^{(3)}\right)
$$

Pure dilatation This is defined by $\lambda_{1}=\lambda_{2}=\lambda_{3}, \mathbf{F}=\lambda_{1} \mathbf{I}$ and might be associated with, for example, the deformation of a cube into a cube of a different size or a sphere into another sphere.

Pure shear This is an isochoric deformation defined by

$$
\mathbf{F}=\lambda \mathbf{u}^{(1)} \otimes \mathbf{u}^{(1)}+\lambda^{-1} \mathbf{u}^{(2)} \otimes \mathbf{u}^{(2)}+\mathbf{u}^{(3)} \otimes \mathbf{u}^{(3)}
$$

with the principal axes independent of $\lambda$. It is an example of a plane strain deformation and is such that $\lambda_{1}=\lambda, \lambda_{2}=\lambda^{-1}, \lambda_{3}=1$.

Simple shear Simple shear is defined by the equations

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{1}=X_{1}+\gamma X_{2}, \quad x_{2}=X_{2}, \quad x_{3}=X_{3} \tag{1.48}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\gamma$ (constant) is called the amount of shear, $\tan ^{-1} \gamma$ is the shear of the directions $\mathbf{e}_{1}, \mathbf{e}_{2}$, and the same basis vectors are used for both reference and current coordinates, see Fig.1.3.


Figure 1.3. Simple shear in the ( $X_{1}, X_{2}$ ) plane showing the orientation angles $\theta$ and $\phi$ of the Lagrangian and Eulerian principal axes.

The deformation gradient $\mathbf{F}$ has matrix of components, denoted $\mathbf{F}$, given by

$$
\mathrm{F}=\left(\frac{\partial x_{i}}{\partial X_{j}}\right)=\left[\begin{array}{ccc}
1 & \gamma & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right]
$$

To find the Lagrangian principal axes we consider, in matrix form,

$$
\mathrm{U}^{2}=\mathrm{F}^{T} \mathrm{~F}=\left[\begin{array}{ccc}
1 & \gamma & 0  \tag{1.49}\\
\gamma & 1+\gamma^{2} & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right]
$$

The characteristic equation for $\mathbf{U}^{2}$, from which the eigenvalues $\lambda^{2}$ are determined, is

$$
\operatorname{det}\left(\mathbf{U}^{2}-\lambda^{2} \mathbf{I}\right)=0
$$

i.e.

$$
\left|\begin{array}{ccc}
1-\lambda^{2} & \gamma & 0 \\
\gamma & 1-\lambda^{2}+\gamma^{2} & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right|=0
$$

or, when expanded out,

$$
\left(\lambda^{2}-1\right)\left[\lambda^{4}-\left(2+\gamma^{2}\right) \lambda^{2}+1\right]=0
$$

Let the values of $\lambda$ be denoted by $\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}$ and $\lambda_{3}=1$. Then

$$
\lambda_{1}^{2}+\lambda_{2}^{2}=2+\gamma^{2}, \quad \lambda_{1}^{2} \lambda_{2}^{2}=1
$$

Now set $\lambda_{1}=\lambda \geq 1, \lambda_{2}=\lambda^{-1}$ so that

$$
\lambda^{2}+\lambda^{-2}=2+\gamma^{2}
$$

and hence

$$
\gamma=\lambda-\lambda^{-1}, \quad \lambda=\frac{1}{2} \gamma+\sqrt{1+\frac{1}{4} \gamma^{2}}
$$

in which we have taken $\gamma \geq 0$ to correspond to $\lambda \geq 1$.
Let

$$
\mathbf{u}^{(1)}=\cos \theta \mathbf{e}_{1}+\sin \theta \mathbf{e}_{2}, \quad \mathbf{u}^{(2)}=-\sin \theta \mathbf{e}_{1}+\cos \theta \mathbf{e}_{2}
$$

Then, when referred to the Cartesian axes, the representation

$$
\mathbf{U}^{2}=\lambda_{1}^{2} \mathbf{u}^{(1)} \otimes \mathbf{u}^{(1)}+\lambda_{2}^{2} \mathbf{u}^{(2)} \otimes \mathbf{u}^{(2)}+\lambda_{3}^{2} \mathbf{u}^{(3)} \otimes \mathbf{u}^{(3)}
$$

yields the matrix $U^{2}$, given by

$$
\lambda^{2}\left[\begin{array}{ccc}
\cos ^{2} \theta & \sin \theta \cos \theta & 0 \\
\sin \theta \cos \theta & \sin ^{2} \theta & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right]+\lambda^{-2}\left[\begin{array}{ccc}
\sin ^{2} \theta & -\sin \theta \cos \theta & 0 \\
-\sin \theta \cos \theta & \cos ^{2} \theta & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right]
$$

Comparison with (1.49) shows that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \lambda^{2} \cos ^{2} \theta+\lambda^{-2} \sin ^{2} \theta=1 \\
& \lambda^{2} \sin ^{2} \theta+\lambda^{-2} \cos ^{2} \theta=1+\gamma^{2} \\
& \left(\lambda^{2}-\lambda^{-2}\right) \sin \theta \cos \theta=\gamma
\end{aligned}
$$

from which we may deduce that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tan 2 \theta=-\frac{2}{\gamma} \quad\left(\frac{\pi}{4} \leq \theta<\frac{\pi}{2}\right) \tag{1.50}
\end{equation*}
$$

The corresponding angle for the principal axes of $\mathbf{F F}^{T}=\mathrm{V}^{2}$ is calculated in a similar way. Let $\mathbf{v}^{(1)}=\cos \phi \mathbf{e}_{1}+\sin \phi \mathbf{e}_{2}, \mathbf{v}^{(2)}=-\sin \phi \mathbf{e}_{1}+\cos \phi \mathbf{e}_{2}$. The result is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tan \phi=\frac{2}{\gamma} \quad\left(0<\phi \leq \frac{\pi}{4}\right) \tag{1.51}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 1.8. Analysis of motion

Recalling that the velocity is denoted $\mathbf{v}$, we define the velocity gradient tensor, denoted L, as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{L}=\operatorname{grad} \mathbf{v} \tag{1.52}
\end{equation*}
$$

which has components

$$
\begin{equation*}
L_{i j}=\frac{\partial v_{i}}{\partial x_{j}} \tag{1.53}
\end{equation*}
$$

with respect to the basis $\left\{\mathbf{e}_{i}\right\}$.
Using the second identity in (1.25), we obtain

$$
\operatorname{Grad} \mathbf{v}=(\operatorname{grad} \mathbf{v}) \mathbf{F}=\mathbf{L F}
$$

Since $\mathbf{v}=\dot{\mathbf{x}}$ we also have

$$
\operatorname{Grad} \dot{\mathbf{x}}=\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \operatorname{Grad} \mathbf{x}=\dot{\mathbf{F}}
$$

recalling that the superposed dot represents the material time derivative. Hence, we have the important connection

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{\mathbf{F}}=\mathbf{L F} \tag{1.54}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using the result

$$
\frac{\partial}{\partial t}(\operatorname{det} \mathbf{F})=(\operatorname{det} \mathbf{F}) \operatorname{tr}\left(\mathbf{F}^{-1} \dot{\mathbf{F}}\right)
$$

together with (1.54) we deduce that

$$
\frac{\partial}{\partial t}(\operatorname{det} \mathbf{F})=(\operatorname{det} \mathbf{F}) \operatorname{tr}(\mathbf{L})
$$

or, equivalently,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{J}=J \operatorname{tr}(\mathbf{L})=J \operatorname{div} \mathbf{v} \tag{1.55}
\end{equation*}
$$

remembering that $J=\operatorname{det} \mathbf{F}, \operatorname{tr}(\mathbf{L})=L_{i i}=\partial v_{i} / \partial x_{i}=\operatorname{div} \mathbf{v}$.
Thus, div $v$ measures the rate at which volume changes during the motion. For an isochoric motion $J \equiv 1, \dot{J}=0$ and hence

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{div} \mathbf{v}=0 \tag{1.56}
\end{equation*}
$$

It should also be noted that from (1.54) and the fact that $\mathbf{F F}^{-1}=\mathbf{I}$ it follows that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left(\mathbf{F}^{-1}\right)=-\mathbf{F}^{-1} \mathbf{L} \tag{1.57}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 1.8.1. Stretching and spin

The deformation gradient $\mathbf{F}$ describes how material line elements change their length and orientation during deformation; the velocity gradient $\mathbf{L}$ describes the rate of these changes. Note that while $\mathbf{F}$ relates $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ to $\mathrm{B}_{r}, \mathbf{L}$ is independent of $\mathrm{B}_{r}$.

Let us write

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{L}=\mathbf{D}+\mathbf{W} \tag{1.58}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{D}=\underbrace{\frac{1}{2}\left(\mathbf{L}+\mathbf{L}^{T}\right)}_{\text {symmetric }}, \quad \mathbf{W}=\underbrace{\frac{1}{2}\left(\mathbf{L}-\mathbf{L}^{T}\right)}_{\text {skewsymmetric }} . \tag{1.59}
\end{equation*}
$$

In order to interpret $\mathbf{D}$ and $\mathbf{W}$ we consider the line element $d \mathbf{X} \rightarrow d \mathbf{x}=$ $\mathbf{F} d \mathbf{X}$. Then, we calculate

$$
\begin{aligned}
d \mathbf{x} \cdot d \mathbf{x}-d \mathbf{X} \cdot d \mathbf{X} & =(\mathbf{F} d \mathbf{X}) \cdot(\mathbf{F} d \mathbf{X})-d \mathbf{X} \cdot d \mathbf{X} \\
& =d \mathbf{X} \cdot\left(\mathbf{F}^{T} \mathbf{F} d \mathbf{X}\right)-d \mathbf{X} \cdot d \mathbf{X} \\
& =d \mathbf{X} \cdot\left(\mathbf{F}^{T} \mathbf{F}-\mathbf{I}\right) d \mathbf{X}
\end{aligned}
$$

From (1.54) it follows that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial}{\partial t}(d \mathbf{x} \cdot d \mathbf{x}-d \mathbf{X} \cdot d \mathbf{X}) & =d \mathbf{X} \cdot \frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left(\mathbf{F}^{T} \mathbf{F}-\mathbf{I}\right) d \mathbf{X}=d \mathbf{X} \cdot\left(\mathbf{F}^{T} \dot{\mathbf{F}}+\dot{\mathbf{F}}^{T} \mathbf{F}\right) d \mathbf{X} \\
& =d \mathbf{X} \cdot\left(\mathbf{F}^{T} \mathbf{L} \mathbf{F}+\mathbf{F}^{T} \mathbf{L}^{T} \mathbf{F}\right) d \mathbf{X} \\
& =(\mathbf{F} d \mathbf{X}) \cdot\left(\mathbf{L}+\mathbf{L}^{T}\right) \mathbf{F} d \mathbf{X}=2 d \mathbf{x} \cdot(\mathbf{D} d \mathbf{x}) .
\end{aligned}
$$

This shows that $\mathbf{D}$ measures the rate at which line elements are changing their lengths. It is called the (Eulerian) strain-rate tensor or rate of stretching tensor. The motion is rigid if and only if $\mathbf{D}=\mathbf{O}$.

Since

$$
\frac{\partial}{\partial t} d \mathbf{x}=\dot{\mathbf{F}} d \mathbf{X}=\mathbf{L F} d \mathbf{X}=\mathbf{L} d \mathbf{x}=(\mathbf{D}+\mathbf{W}) d \mathbf{x}
$$

and we have an interpretation of $\mathbf{D}$, as discussed above, it remains to interpret $\mathbf{W}$. We do this by setting $\mathbf{D}=\mathbf{O}$, so that

$$
\frac{\partial}{\partial t} d \mathbf{x}=\mathbf{W} d \mathbf{x}=\mathbf{w} \times d \mathbf{x}
$$

where $\mathbf{w}$ is the axial vector of $\mathbf{W}$. This shows that the motion is locally a rigid rotation and $\mathbf{W}$ is a measure of the rate of rotation (or spin) of line elements
and it is called the body spin. The combination of $\mathbf{D}$ and $\mathbf{W}$ shows that the motion consists of stretching and rotation (analogous to the interpretation of $\mathbf{U}$ and $\mathbf{R}$ ). Note, however, that if $\mathbf{D} \neq 0$ then it contributes a rotation to line elements and the interpretation of $\mathbf{W}$ requires modification.

### 1.9. Integration of tensors

We first summarize some results from vector calculus that will be needed subsequently. The divergence theorem is written

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{R} \operatorname{div} \mathbf{v} d V=\int_{\partial R} \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{n} d A \tag{1.60}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $R$ is a domain in $\mathbb{R}^{3}$ and $\partial R$ is its boundary (a closed surface), and $\mathbf{v}$ is a vector field. An alternative (and equivalent) form of the theorem is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{R} \nabla \phi d V=\int_{\partial R} \phi \mathbf{n} d A \tag{1.61}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\phi$ is a scalar field, or, in index notation,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{R} \frac{\partial \phi}{\partial x_{i}} d V=\int_{\partial R} \phi n_{i} d A . \tag{1.62}
\end{equation*}
$$

In particular, (1.62) applies to the components (which are scalar fields) $T_{p q r . . . ~ o f ~ a n y ~ C a r t e s i a n ~ t e n s o r . ~ T h u s, ~}^{\text {, }}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{R} \frac{\partial T_{p q r \ldots}}{\partial x_{i}} d V=\int_{\partial R} T_{p q r \ldots} n_{i} d A . \tag{1.63}
\end{equation*}
$$

In tensor notation (1.59) is equivalent to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{R} \nabla \otimes \mathbf{T} d V=\int_{\partial R} \mathbf{T} \otimes \mathbf{n} d A \tag{1.64}
\end{equation*}
$$

If, in particular, $\mathbf{T}$ is a second-order Cartesian tensor then contraction of (1.63), with $i=p$, gives

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{R} \frac{\partial T_{p q}}{\partial x_{p}} d V=\int_{\partial R} T_{p q} n_{p} d A \tag{1.65}
\end{equation*}
$$

or, in tensor notation,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{R} \operatorname{div} \mathbf{T} d V=\int_{\partial R} \mathbf{T}^{T} \mathbf{n} d A \tag{1.66}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is an important formula and will occur frequently in the remaining chapters of this volume.

### 1.10. Transport formulas

Let $C_{t}, S_{t}$ and $R_{t}$ denote curves, surfaces and regions in $\mathrm{B}_{t}$, the current configuration of the body. Then, the following identities hold:

$$
\begin{gather*}
\frac{d}{d t} \int_{C_{t}} \phi d \mathbf{x}=\int_{C_{t}}(\dot{\phi} d \mathbf{x}+\phi \mathbf{L} d \mathbf{x}),  \tag{1.67}\\
\frac{d}{d t} \int_{S_{t}} \phi \mathbf{n} d a=\int_{S_{t}}\left\{[\dot{\phi}+\phi \operatorname{tr}(\mathbf{L})] \mathbf{n}-\phi \mathbf{L}^{T} \mathbf{n}\right\} d a,  \tag{1.68}\\
\frac{d}{d t} \int_{R_{t}} \phi d v=\int_{R_{t}}[\dot{\phi}+\phi \operatorname{tr}(\mathbf{L})] d v,  \tag{1.69}\\
\frac{d}{d t} \int_{C_{t}} \mathbf{u} \cdot d \mathbf{x}=\int_{C_{t}}\left(\dot{\mathbf{u}}+\mathbf{L}^{T} \mathbf{u}\right) \cdot d \mathbf{x},  \tag{1.70}\\
\frac{d}{d t} \int_{S_{t}} \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{n} d a=\int_{S_{t}}[\dot{\mathbf{u}}+\mathbf{u t r}(\mathbf{L})-\mathbf{L u}] \cdot \mathbf{n} d a  \tag{1.71}\\
\frac{d}{d t} \int_{R_{t}} \mathbf{u} d v=\int_{R_{t}}[\dot{\mathbf{u}}+\operatorname{tr}(\mathbf{L}) \mathbf{u}] d v . \tag{1.72}
\end{gather*}
$$

## Proof

Use the formulas $d \mathbf{x}=\mathbf{F} d \mathbf{X}, \mathbf{n} d a=J \mathbf{F}^{-T} \mathbf{N} d A, d v=J d V$ to convert the integrals over $C_{t}, S_{t}, R_{t}$ in $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ to integrals over $C_{r}, S_{r}, R_{r}$ in $\mathrm{B}_{r}$, together with expressions for $\dot{\mathbf{F}}$ and $\dot{J}$. We illustrate the process by proving (1.71).

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{d t} \int_{S_{t}} \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{n} d a & =\frac{d}{d t} \int_{S_{r}} \mathbf{u} \cdot\left(J \mathbf{F}^{-T} \mathbf{N}\right) d A \\
& =\frac{d}{d t} \int_{S_{r}}\left(J \mathbf{F}^{-1} \mathbf{u}\right) \cdot \mathbf{N} d A \\
& =\int_{S_{r}} \underbrace{\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left(J \mathbf{F}^{-1} \mathbf{u}\right)}_{\text {ate the integral is now over } \left.S_{r}\right)} \cdot \mathbf{N} d A \\
& =\int_{S_{r}}\left[J \mathbf{F}^{-1} \dot{\mathbf{u}}+\dot{\mathbf{x}} \mathbf{F}^{-1} \mathbf{u}+J \partial\left(\mathbf{F}^{-1}\right) / \partial t \mathbf{u}\right] \cdot \mathbf{N} d A
\end{aligned}
$$

- From (1.55) we have $\dot{J}=J \operatorname{tr}(\mathbf{L})$, and from (1.57) we have $\partial\left(\mathbf{F}^{-1}\right) / \partial t=$ $-\mathbf{F}^{-1} \mathbf{L}$. Thus,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \frac{d}{d t} \int_{S_{t}} \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{n} d a=\int_{S_{r}}\left[J \mathbf{F}^{-1} \dot{\mathbf{u}}+J \operatorname{tr}(\mathbf{L}) \mathbf{F}^{-1} \mathbf{u}-J \mathbf{F}^{-1} \mathbf{L} \mathbf{u}\right] \cdot \mathbf{N} d A \\
&=\int_{S_{r}}\left\{J \mathbf{F}^{-1}[\dot{\mathbf{u}}+\operatorname{tr}(\mathbf{L}) \mathbf{u}-\mathbf{L} \mathbf{u}]\right\} \cdot \mathbf{N} d A \\
&=\int_{S_{r}}[\dot{\mathbf{u}}+\operatorname{tr}(\mathbf{L}) \mathbf{u}-\mathbf{L} \mathbf{u}] \cdot\left(J \mathbf{F}^{-T} \mathbf{N}\right) d A \\
&=\int_{S_{t}}[\dot{\mathbf{u}}+\operatorname{tr}(\mathbf{L}) \mathbf{u}-\mathbf{L} \mathbf{u}] \cdot \mathbf{n} d a \\
&\left(\text { converting back to an integral over } S_{t}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

The other formulas are established by following the same approach.

## Chapter 2

## Balance laws and equations of motion

The mechanics of continuous media are described by equations which express the balance of mass, linear momentum, angular momentum and energy in a moving body. These balance equations apply to all bodies, solid or fluid, and each gives rise to field equations (differential equations for scalar, vector and tensor fields) for sufficiently smooth motions (or jump conditions across surfaces of discontinuity). The fundamental concepts are mass, force and energy.

### 2.1. Mass

Let $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ be an arbitrary configuration of a body $\mathcal{B}$, and let $\mathrm{A}_{t}$ be a set of points in $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ occupied by the particles in an arbitrary subset $\mathcal{A}$ of $\mathcal{B}$. If, with $\mathcal{A}$, there is associated a non-negative real number $m(\mathcal{A})$ having physical dimensions independent of time and distance, such that
(i) $m\left(\mathcal{A}_{1} \cup \mathcal{A}_{2}\right)=m\left(\mathcal{A}_{1}\right)+m\left(\mathcal{A}_{2}\right)$
for all pairs $\mathcal{A}_{1}, \mathcal{A}_{2}$ of disjoint subsets of $\mathcal{B}$, and
(ii) $m(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow 0$ as the volume of A tends to zero,
then $\mathcal{B}$ is said to be a body with mass function $m$. The mass of $\mathrm{A}_{t}$ is denoted $m\left(\mathrm{~A}_{t}\right)$.

Properties (i) and (ii) imply that there exists a scalar field $\rho$, defined on $\mathrm{B}_{t}$, such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
m\left(\mathrm{~A}_{t}\right)=\int_{\mathrm{A}_{t}} \rho d v \tag{2.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

(this is a result from measure theory, and a proof is not given here). We refer to $\rho$ as the mass density of the material composing $\mathcal{B}$. It is a scalar field, and here it will be assumed to be continuously differentiable (although in general this need not be the case).

### 2.2. Mass conservation

Let $R_{t}$ be an arbitrary material region in the current configuration $\mathrm{B}_{t}$. As $R_{t}$ moves it always consists of the same material, so its mass does not change, i.e.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d t} \int_{R_{t}} \rho d v=0 \tag{2.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is one form of the conservation of mass equation. From the transport formula (1.69) we obtain

$$
\int_{R_{t}}(\dot{\rho}+\rho \operatorname{div} \mathbf{v}) d v=0
$$

and, since $R_{t}$ is arbitrary, it follows that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{\rho}+\rho \operatorname{div} \mathbf{v}=0 \tag{2.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

at each point of the body (this deduction requires that the integrand is continuous). This is the local form of the mass conservation equation and it is also known as the continuity equation.

Recall, from (1.51), that $\dot{J}=J \operatorname{div} \mathbf{v}$. Substitution for div $\mathbf{v}$ from (2.3) then gives $\rho \dot{J}+\dot{\rho} J=0$, i.e. $\partial(\rho J) / \partial t=0$. Thus, $\rho J$ is constant for any material particle. In the reference configuration $J=1$, so that $\rho J=\rho_{r}$, where $\rho_{r}$ is the mass density in the reference configuration. Thus,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\rho=J^{-1} \rho_{r}, \tag{2.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

which is yet another form of the mass conservation equation.
An alternative way to derive (2.4) is to note that

$$
\int_{R_{t}} \rho d v=\int_{R_{r}} \rho J d V=\int_{R_{r}} \rho_{r} d V,
$$

where $R_{r}$ is the counterpart of $R_{t}$ in the reference configuration.

### 2.3. Force, torque and momentum

### 2.3.1. Body and surface forces

The concepts of force and torque describe the action on moving material body $\mathcal{B}$ of its surroundings and the mutual actions of the parts of $\mathcal{B}$ on each other. With $R_{t} \subset \mathrm{~B}_{t}$ we associate two vectors, $\mathbf{F}\left(R_{t}\right)$ and $\mathbf{G}\left(R_{t} ; o\right)$, called the force and the torque with respect to $o$ on the material in $R_{t}$. Two types of force and torque must be accounted for in general. These are body forces and body torques, which act on the particles of a body (arising from gravity or magnetic fields, for example), and contact forces and contact torques resulting from the action of one part of the body on another across a separating surface (for example, pressure or friction).

The body force and torque, measured per unit mass, are denoted $\mathbf{b}$ and $\mathbf{c}$ respectively. Their contributions to $\mathbf{F}\left(R_{t}\right)$ and $\mathbf{G}\left(R_{t} ; o\right)$ are

$$
\int_{R_{t}} \rho \mathbf{b} d v, \quad \int_{R_{t}}[\mathbf{x} \times(\rho \mathbf{b})+\rho \mathbf{c}] d v
$$

respectively, where $\mathbf{x}$ is the position vector of the point at which $\mathbf{b}$ acts.
A mathematical description of contact forces (but not torques) relies on Cauchy's stress principle, which is regarded as an axiom. This states that
the action of the material occupying that part of $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ exterior to a closed surface $S$ on the material occupying the interior part is represented by a vector field, denoted $\mathbf{t}_{(\mathbf{n})}$, defined on $S$ and with physical dimensions of force per unit area. This is depicted in Fig. 2.1.

We refer to $\mathbf{t}_{(\mathbf{n})}$ as the stress vector. It is assumed to depend continuously on $\mathbf{n}$, the unit outward normal to $S$.

If this stress principle gives a complete account of contact action then the material is said to be non-polar and does not admit contact torques. All classical theories of solids and fluids are of this type.

The contributions to $\mathbf{F}\left(R_{t}\right)$ and $\mathbf{G}\left(R_{t} ; o\right)$ of the contact forces acting on the boundary $\partial R_{t}$ of $R_{t}$ are

$$
\int_{\partial R_{t}} \mathbf{t}_{(\mathbf{n})} d a, \quad \int_{\partial R_{t}} \mathbf{x} \times \mathbf{t}_{(\mathbf{n})} d a
$$

respectively. We now have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{F}\left(R_{t}\right)=\int_{R_{t}} \rho \mathbf{b} d v+\int_{\partial R_{t}} \mathbf{t}_{(\mathbf{n})} d a \tag{2.5}
\end{equation*}
$$



Figure 2.1. Stress vector $\mathbf{t}_{(\mathbf{n})}$ at a point of the surface $S$ where the unit normal is n .

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{G}\left(R_{t} ; o\right)=\int_{R_{t}} \rho(\mathbf{x} \times \mathbf{b}+\mathbf{c}) d v+\int_{\partial R_{t}} \mathbf{x} \times \mathbf{t}_{(\mathbf{n})} d a \tag{2.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

for the total force and total torque (sometimes referred to as couple) about $o$ acting on $R_{t}$.

### 2.3.2. Momentum and angular momentum

Let $R_{t} \subset \mathrm{~B}_{t}$. The linear momentum of the material occupying $R_{t}$ is defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{M}\left(R_{t}\right)=\int_{R_{t}} \rho \mathbf{v} d v . \tag{2.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

With respect to an origin o, the angular momentum of $R_{t}$ is defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{H}\left(R_{t} ; o\right)=\int_{R_{t}} \mathbf{x} \times(\rho \mathbf{v}) d v \tag{2.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 2.4. Euler's laws of motion

Euler's laws of motion are

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d \mathbf{M}}{d t}=\mathbf{F}, \quad \frac{d \mathbf{H}}{d t}=\mathbf{G} \tag{2.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

and these hold independently of the choice of origin (although $\mathbf{G}$ and $\mathbf{H}$ do depend on such a choice).

They parallel Newton's laws for particles and rigid bodies. Note, however, that in classical mechanics $(2.9)_{2}$ is a consequence of $(2.9)_{1}$, whereas in
continuum mechanics this is not the case and the two equations in (2.9) are independent.

Here we do not consider body torques, so we set $\mathbf{c}=\mathbf{0}$, and equations (2.9) are then written in full as

$$
\begin{gather*}
\frac{d}{d t} \int_{R_{t}} \rho \mathbf{v} d v=\int_{R_{t}} \rho \mathbf{b} d v+\int_{\partial R_{t}} \mathbf{t}_{(\mathbf{n})} d a,  \tag{2.10}\\
\frac{d}{d t} \int_{R_{t}} \rho \mathbf{x} \times \mathbf{v} d v=\int_{R_{t}} \rho \mathbf{x} \times \mathbf{b} d v+\int_{\partial R_{t}} \mathbf{x} \times \mathbf{t}_{(\mathbf{n})} d a . \tag{2.11}
\end{gather*}
$$

These are the equations of, respectively, linear and angular momentum balance.

Using the transport formula (1.72) with $\mathbf{u}=\rho \mathbf{v}$ and (2.3) we obtain

$$
\frac{d}{d t} \int_{R_{t}} \rho \mathbf{v} d v=\int_{R_{t}}[\rho \dot{\mathbf{v}}+\dot{\rho} \mathbf{v}+\rho(\operatorname{div} \mathbf{v}) \mathbf{v}] d v=\int_{R_{t}} \rho \dot{\mathbf{v}} d v .
$$

Hence (2.10) and (2.11) can be written

$$
\begin{align*}
\int_{R_{t}} \rho(\mathbf{a}-\mathbf{b}) d v & =\int_{\partial R_{t}} \mathbf{t}_{(\mathbf{n})} d a  \tag{2.12}\\
\int_{R_{t}} \rho \mathbf{x} \times(\mathbf{a}-\mathbf{b}) d v & =\int_{\partial R_{t}} \mathbf{x} \times \mathbf{t}_{(\mathbf{n})} d a \tag{2.13}
\end{align*}
$$

where $\mathbf{a} \equiv \dot{\mathbf{v}}$ is the acceleration.

### 2.5. The theory of stress

### 2.5.1. Cauchy's theorem

Let $\left(\mathbf{t}_{(\mathbf{n})}, \mathbf{b}\right)$ be a system of surface (contact) and body forces for $\mathcal{B}$ during a motion. A necessary and sufficient condition for the momentum balance equations (2.12) and (2.13) to be satisfied is that there exists a second-order tensor $\sigma$, called the Cauchy stress tensor, such that
(i) for each unit vector $\mathbf{n}$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{t}_{(\mathbf{n})}=\sigma^{T} \mathbf{n} \tag{2.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$ is independent of $\mathbf{n}$,
(ii)

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{T}=\boldsymbol{\sigma}, \tag{2.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

(iii) $\sigma$ satisfies the equation of motion

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{div} \sigma+\rho \mathbf{b}=\rho \mathbf{a} . \tag{2.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

## Proof

Sufficiency: this can easily be checked by substituting (2.14)-(2.16) into (2.12) and (2.13). The calculations involved are similar to those required to prove necessity, so will not be given here. Necessity: assume that (2.12) and (2.13) are satisfied. The proof involves a number of steps. For this purpose, we now write $\mathbf{t}_{(\mathbf{n})}$ as $\mathbf{t}(\mathbf{n}, \mathbf{x})$ to indicate its dependence on both $\mathbf{n}$ and the position $\mathbf{x}$ on a surface.

Lemma 2.1. Given any $\mathbf{x} \in \mathrm{B}_{t}$, any orthonormal basis $\left\{\mathbf{e}_{i}\right\}$ and any vector $\mathbf{p}$ with $\mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{e}_{i}>0, i \in\{1,2,3\}$, the stress vector can be written

$$
\mathbf{t}(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{x})=-\sum_{i=1}^{3}\left(\mathbf{p} \cdot \mathbf{e}_{i}\right) \mathbf{t}\left(-\mathbf{e}_{i}, \mathbf{x}\right)
$$



Figure 2.2. Tetrahedral volume bounded by the coordinate planes and the surface $S_{\delta}$ with unit normal $\mathbf{p}$. The point $\mathbf{x}$ is taken as the origin.

## Proof

Suppose that $\mathbf{x} \in \mathrm{B}_{t}, \delta>0$ and consider the tetrahedron shown in Fig. 2.2. The faces of the tetrahedron are denoted $S_{1}, S_{2}, S_{3}$ and $S_{\delta}$, with unit (outward) normals $-\mathbf{e}_{1},-\mathbf{e}_{2},-\mathbf{e}_{3}, \mathbf{p}$ respectively, $\delta$ being the distance of the sloping face from $\mathbf{x}$. Since $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ are continuous in $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ they are bounded on some neighbourhood of x in $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ containing the tetrahedron for
sufficiently small $\delta$. Similarly, $\rho$ is bounded, so that

$$
\left|\int_{\partial R_{t}} \mathbf{t}_{(\mathbf{n})} d a\right|=\left|\int_{R_{t}} \rho(\mathbf{a}-\mathbf{b}) d v\right|<k \operatorname{vol}\left(R_{t}\right)
$$

where $k$ is a constant independent of $\delta$ and $\operatorname{vol}\left(R_{t}\right)$ denotes the volume of the tetrahedron.

Let $A(\delta)$ denotes the area of the face $S_{\delta}$. Then there exist positive constants $c_{1}, c_{2}$ such that

$$
A(\delta)=c_{1} \delta^{2}, \quad \operatorname{vol}\left(R_{t}\right)=c_{2} \delta^{3}
$$

Hence

$$
\frac{1}{A(\delta)} \int_{\partial R_{t}} \mathbf{t}_{(\mathbf{n})} d a \rightarrow 0 \quad \text { as } \delta \rightarrow 0
$$

Let $A_{i}$ denote the area of $S_{i}$. Since, by the divergence theorem, we have

$$
\int_{\partial R_{t}} \mathbf{e}_{i} \cdot \mathbf{n} d S=0 \quad i \in\{1,2,3\}
$$

it follows that

$$
A_{i}=\left(\mathbf{e}_{i} \cdot \mathbf{p}\right) A(\delta)
$$

But

$$
\int_{\partial R_{t}} \mathbf{t}_{(\mathbf{n})} d a=\int_{S_{\delta}} \mathbf{t}(\mathbf{p}) d a+\sum_{i=1}^{3} \int_{S_{i}} \mathbf{t}\left(-\mathbf{e}_{i}\right) d a
$$

and

$$
\begin{gathered}
\frac{1}{A(\delta)} \int_{S_{\delta}} \mathbf{t}_{(\mathbf{n})} d a \rightarrow \mathbf{t}(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{x}) \quad \text { as } \delta \rightarrow 0 \\
\frac{1}{A(\delta)} \int_{S_{i}} \mathbf{t}\left(-\mathbf{e}_{i}\right) d a \rightarrow\left(\mathbf{e}_{i} \cdot \mathbf{p}\right) \mathbf{t}\left(-\mathbf{e}_{i}, \mathbf{x}\right) \quad \text { as } \delta \rightarrow 0
\end{gathered}
$$

Hence the stated result.
It follows that

$$
\mathbf{t}\left(\mathbf{e}_{i}, \mathbf{x}\right)=-\mathbf{t}\left(-\mathbf{e}_{i}, \mathbf{x}\right)
$$

and hence

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{t}(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{x})=\sum_{i=1}^{3}\left(\mathbf{e}_{i} \cdot \mathbf{p}\right) \mathbf{t}\left(\mathbf{e}_{i}, \mathbf{x}\right) \tag{2.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

for any vector $\mathbf{p}$.

Main result. Consider the tensor $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$ defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{T}(\mathbf{x})=\sum_{i=1}^{3} \mathrm{t}\left(\mathbf{e}_{i}, \mathbf{x}\right) \otimes \mathbf{e}_{i} . \tag{2.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then, by (2.17),

$$
\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{T} \mathbf{n}=\sum_{i=1}^{3}\left(\mathbf{e}_{i} \cdot \mathbf{n}\right) \mathbf{t}\left(\mathbf{e}_{i}, \mathbf{x}\right)=\mathbf{t}(\mathbf{n}, \mathbf{x}) .
$$

Hence (i) is established.
On substitution of $\mathbf{t}_{(\mathbf{n})}=\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{T} \mathbf{n}$ into (2.12), we obtain

$$
\int_{R_{t}} \rho(\mathbf{a}-\mathbf{b}) d v=\int_{\partial R_{t}} \boldsymbol{\sigma}^{T} \mathbf{n} d a=\int_{R_{t}} \operatorname{div} \boldsymbol{\sigma} d v
$$

by the divergence theorem (1.66). Thus,

$$
\int_{R_{t}}[\operatorname{div} \boldsymbol{\sigma}-\rho(\mathbf{a}-\mathbf{b})] d v=\mathbf{0}
$$

Since $R_{t}$ is arbitrary, (iii) follows (provided the above integrand is continuous). It remains to prove (ii).

Next, substitute (2.14) and (2.16) into (2.13) to give

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{R_{t}} \mathbf{x} \times(\operatorname{div} \boldsymbol{\sigma}) d v=\int_{\partial R_{t}} \mathbf{x} \times\left(\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{T} \mathbf{n}\right) d a . \tag{2.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

Noting that $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}=\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$, for any vectors $\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}$, is equivalent to

$$
\mathbf{u} \otimes \mathbf{v}-\mathbf{v} \otimes \mathbf{u}=\mathbf{a} \otimes \mathbf{b}-\mathbf{b} \otimes \mathbf{a}
$$

we write (2.19) as

$$
\int_{R_{t}}[\mathbf{x} \otimes \operatorname{div} \boldsymbol{\sigma}-(\operatorname{div} \boldsymbol{\sigma}) \otimes \mathbf{x}] d v=\int_{\partial R_{t}}\left(\mathbf{x} \otimes \boldsymbol{\sigma}^{T} \mathbf{n}-\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{T} \mathbf{n} \otimes \mathbf{x}\right) d a,
$$

which, by application of the divergence theorem, becomes

$$
\int_{R_{t}}\left[(\operatorname{grad} \mathbf{x}) \boldsymbol{\sigma} \cdots \sigma^{T}(\operatorname{grad} \mathbf{x})^{T}\right] d v
$$

Since $\operatorname{grad} \mathbf{x}=\mathbf{I}$, the identity tensor, we deduce that

$$
\int_{R_{t}}\left(\boldsymbol{\sigma}-\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{T}\right) d v=\mathbf{O} .
$$

Since $R_{t}$ is arbitrary, (ii) follows.

### 2.5.2. Normal and shear stresses

Suppose an element of area $d a$ on a surface $S$ with unit normal $\mathbf{n}$ is subjected to a contact force $\mathbf{t}(\mathbf{n}) d a$. The normal component of the stress vector, denoted $\sigma$, is defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma \equiv \mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{t}(\mathbf{n})=\mathbf{n} \cdot(\sigma \mathbf{n}) . \tag{2.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is called the normal stress on the surface $S$. It is tensile (compressive) when positive (negative), and we have written $\mathbf{t}_{(\mathbf{n})}=\mathbf{t}(\mathbf{n})=\mathbf{t}$.

The stress vector tangential to $S$ is denoted $\tau$, with magnitude $\tau$, and given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{\tau} \equiv \mathbf{t}(\mathbf{n})-\sigma \mathbf{n}, \quad \tau=|\mathbf{t}(\mathbf{n})-\sigma \mathbf{n}|, \tag{2.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

from which it follows that

$$
\tau^{2}=\mathbf{t}(\mathbf{n}) \cdot \mathbf{t}(\mathbf{n})-[\mathbf{t}(\mathbf{n}) \cdot \mathbf{n}]^{2} .
$$

We refer to $\tau$ as the shear stress.
If $\tau=0$ and $\sigma$ is independent of $\mathbf{n}$ then the stress is said to be hydrostatic or isotropic. In this case there is a scalar field $p$, called the pressure, such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{t}(\mathbf{n})=-p \mathbf{n}, \quad \boldsymbol{\sigma}=-p \mathbf{I} . \tag{2.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

At a point $\mathbf{x}$ in the current configuration $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ let $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$ have components $\sigma_{i j}$ with respect to basis vectors $\left\{\mathbf{e}_{i}\right\}$. Then $\sigma_{i j}$ is the $j$ th component of force per unit area in $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ acting on a surface whose normal is in the $i$-direction. In particular, for a surface normal to $\mathbf{e}_{1}, \sigma_{11}$ is normal and $\sigma_{12}$ and $\sigma_{13}$ are tangential, i.e. they are shearing components. Similarly for the other components. In the case of $(2.22), \sigma_{12}=0, \sigma_{13}=0, \sigma_{11}=-p$, so the only component of force acting is a normal pressure.

### 2.6. Energy

The kinetic energy $K\left(R_{t}\right)$ of the material occupying $R_{t}$ is defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
K\left(R_{t}\right)=\int_{R_{t}} \frac{1}{2} \rho \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v} d v \tag{2.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the rate of working, or power, $P\left(R_{t}\right)$ of the forces acting on $R_{t}$ is defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
P\left(R_{t}\right)=\int_{R_{\mathrm{t}}} \rho \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{v} d v+\int_{\partial R_{t}} \mathbf{t} \cdot \mathbf{v} d a . \tag{2.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

By using $\mathbf{t}=\boldsymbol{\sigma} \mathbf{n}$ in (2.24), we obtain

$$
\begin{align*}
& P\left(R_{t}\right)=\int_{R_{t}} \rho \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{v} d v+\int_{\partial R_{t}}(\boldsymbol{\sigma} \mathbf{n}) \cdot \mathbf{v} d a \\
&=\int_{R_{t}} \rho \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{v} d v+\int_{\partial R_{t}}(\boldsymbol{\sigma} \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{n} d a \\
&=\int_{R_{t}}[\rho \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{v}+\operatorname{div}(\boldsymbol{\sigma} \mathbf{v})] d v \\
&(\text { by the } \operatorname{divergence} \text { is symmetric }) \\
&=\int_{R_{t}}[\rho \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{v}+(\operatorname{div} \boldsymbol{\sigma}) \cdot \mathbf{v}+\operatorname{tr}(\boldsymbol{\sigma} \mathbf{L})] d v \\
&\left(\text { since }\left(\sigma_{i j} v_{j}\right)_{, i}=\sigma_{i j, i} v_{j}+\sigma_{i j} v_{j, i}=\sigma_{i j, i} v_{j}+\sigma_{i j} L_{j i}\right) \\
&=\int_{R_{t}}[(\rho \mathbf{b}+\operatorname{div} \boldsymbol{\sigma}) \cdot \mathbf{v}+\operatorname{tr}(\boldsymbol{\sigma} \mathbf{D})] d v \\
&\left(\text { since } \sigma_{i j} L_{j i}=\sigma_{i j}\left(D_{i j}+W_{i j}\right)=\sigma_{i j} D_{i j}\right) \\
&=\int_{R_{t}} \frac{1}{2} \rho \partial(\mathbf{v}+\operatorname{tr}(\boldsymbol{\sigma} \mathbf{D})] d v \\
&=\int_{R_{r}} \frac{1}{2} \rho_{r} \partial(\mathbf{v}) / \partial t d v+\int_{R_{t}} \operatorname{tr}(\boldsymbol{\sigma}) / \partial t d V+\int_{R_{t}} \operatorname{tr}(\boldsymbol{\sigma} \mathbf{D}) d v \\
&\left(\operatorname{since} \rho d v=\rho_{r} d V\right) \\
&= \frac{d}{d t} \int_{R_{r}} \frac{1}{2} \rho_{r}(\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v}) d V+\int_{R_{t}} \operatorname{tr}(\boldsymbol{\sigma} \mathbf{D}) d v \\
&= \frac{d}{d t} K\left(R_{t}\right)+\int_{R_{t}} \operatorname{tr}(\boldsymbol{\sigma} \mathbf{D}) d v . \\
&
\end{align*}
$$

Thus,

$$
\begin{equation*}
P\left(R_{t}\right)=\frac{d}{d t} K\left(R_{t}\right)+S\left(R_{t}\right) \tag{2.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
S\left(R_{t}\right)=\int_{R_{t}} \operatorname{tr}(\sigma \mathbf{D}) d v \tag{2.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

Equation (2.26) is an energy balance equation. The work done by the body and surface forces is converted into kinetic energy and $S\left(R_{t}\right)$. The latter may consist of stored (or potential) energy or be a measure of the amount of work dissipated in the form of heat or be a mixture of the two.

The following relations are worth noting. For a body held in equilibrium in configuration B, it may be shown, using the equations of equilibrium, that

$$
\int_{B} \boldsymbol{\sigma} d v=\int_{\partial B} \boldsymbol{\sigma} \mathbf{n} \otimes \mathbf{x} d a+\int_{B} \rho \mathbf{b} \otimes \mathbf{x} d v .
$$

Again, if a body is in equilibrium in configuration $B$ then, for any differentiable vector field $\mathbf{u}$,

$$
\int_{B} \operatorname{tr}(\boldsymbol{\sigma} \operatorname{grad} \mathbf{u}) d v=\int_{B} \rho \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{u} d v+\int_{\partial B} \mathbf{t} \cdot \mathbf{u} d a .
$$

### 2.7. Stress tensors

Using Nanson's formula (1.31) the traction on an area element $\mathbf{n} d a$ in the current configuration can be written

$$
\mathbf{t} d a=\boldsymbol{\sigma} \mathbf{n} d a=J \boldsymbol{\sigma} \mathbf{F}^{-T} \mathbf{N} d A \equiv \mathbf{S}^{T} \mathbf{N} d A
$$

wherein the nominal stress tensor $\mathbf{S}$ is defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{S}=J \mathbf{F}^{-1} \boldsymbol{\sigma} \tag{2.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is also referred to as the engineering stress, while $\mathbf{S}^{T}$ is the so-called first Piola-Kirchhoff stress tensor, and it measures the force per unit reference area while $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$ measures the force per unit deformed area. Note that, in general, $\mathbf{S}$ is not symmetric but satisfies the connection

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{F S}=\mathbf{S}^{T} \mathbf{F}^{T} \tag{2.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

arising from symmetry of $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$.
The equation of motion

$$
\operatorname{div} \sigma+\rho \mathbf{b}=\rho \mathbf{a} \equiv \rho \dot{\mathbf{v}}
$$

can be recast in terms of $\mathbf{S}$. One way to do this is to use the integral form of the balance equation, i.e.

$$
\int_{\mathrm{R}_{t}} \rho \mathbf{b} d v+\int_{\partial \mathrm{R}_{t}} \sigma \mathbf{n} d a=\int_{\mathrm{R}_{t}} \rho \dot{\mathbf{v}} d v,
$$

and convert the integrals to integrals over the reference configuration using mass conservation in the form $\rho d v=\rho_{r} d V$ and Nanson's formula (1.31). This leads to

$$
\int_{\mathrm{R}_{r}} \rho_{r} \mathbf{b} d V+\int_{\partial \mathrm{R}_{r}} \mathbf{S}^{T} \mathbf{N} d A=\int_{\mathrm{R}_{r}} \rho_{r} \dot{\mathbf{v}} d V,
$$

and hence, by the divergence theorem,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Div} \mathbf{S}+\rho_{r} \mathbf{b}=\rho_{r} \dot{\mathbf{v}} \tag{2.30}
\end{equation*}
$$

Alternatively, the identity $\operatorname{div}\left(J^{-1} \mathbf{F}\right)=\mathbf{0}$, obtained from $(1.26)_{2}$ by setting $\mathbf{T}=\mathbf{I}$, can be used to give

$$
\operatorname{div} \boldsymbol{\sigma}=J^{-1} \operatorname{Div} \mathbf{S}
$$

and then use of $J=\rho_{r} / \rho$ leads to (2.30).
Now recall the expression

$$
S\left(\mathrm{R}_{t}\right)=\int_{\mathrm{R}_{t}} \operatorname{tr}(\sigma \mathbf{D}) d v
$$

occurring in the energy balance equations (2.25)-(2.27). Over the reference configuration the integral becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{\mathrm{R}_{r}} J \operatorname{tr}(\sigma \mathbf{D}) d V \tag{2.31}
\end{equation*}
$$

The integrand in (2.31) is the rate of working of the stresses per unit reference volume (i.e. the stress power density). Using the symmetry of $\sigma$ together with (1.50) and (2.28) we have

$$
J \operatorname{tr}(\boldsymbol{\sigma} \mathbf{D})=J \operatorname{tr}(\boldsymbol{\sigma} \mathbf{L})=\operatorname{tr}(\mathbf{F S L})=\operatorname{tr}(\mathbf{S L F})=\operatorname{tr}(\mathbf{S} \dot{\mathbf{F}})
$$

This shows that the stress power is also given by $\operatorname{tr}(\mathbf{S F})$. Because of this connection $\mathbf{S}$ and $\mathbf{F}$ are said to constitute a pair of conjugate stress and deformation tensors.

Furthermore, by recalling the definition (1.39) and writing

$$
\mathbf{E}^{(2)}=\frac{1}{2}\left(\mathbf{F}^{T} \mathbf{F}-\mathbf{I}\right)
$$

we obtain

$$
\dot{\mathbf{E}}^{(2)}=\frac{1}{2}\left(\mathbf{F}^{T} \dot{\mathbf{F}}+\dot{\mathbf{F}}^{T} \mathbf{F}\right) \equiv \mathbf{F}^{T} \mathbf{D F}
$$

This is used to write the stress power as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{tr}(\mathbf{S} \dot{\mathbf{F}})=\operatorname{tr}\left(\mathbf{S} \mathbf{F}^{-T} \mathbf{F}^{T} \dot{\mathbf{F}}\right)=\operatorname{tr}\left(\mathbf{S} \mathbf{F}^{-T} \dot{\mathbf{E}}^{(2)}\right)=\operatorname{tr}\left(\mathbf{T}^{(2)} \dot{\mathbf{E}}^{(2)}\right) \tag{2.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

using the symmetry of $\mathbf{S F}^{-T}$, which comes from the definition (2.28). We have also introduced the notation $\mathbf{T}^{(2)}$, defined through

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{S F}^{-T}=J \mathbf{F}^{-1} \boldsymbol{\sigma} \mathbf{F}^{-T} \equiv \mathbf{T}^{(2)} \tag{2.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

which denotes the second Piola-Kirchhoff stress tensor. The stress and strain pair $\left(\mathbf{T}^{(2)}, \mathbf{E}^{(2)}\right)$ is a pair of conjugate stress and strain tensors.

Since, from (1.40), $\mathbf{F}^{T} \mathbf{F}=\mathbf{U}^{2}$ we also have

$$
\dot{\mathbf{E}}^{(2)}=\frac{1}{2}(\mathbf{U} \dot{\mathbf{U}}+\dot{\mathbf{U}} \mathbf{U})
$$

and hence, using the symmetry of $\mathbf{T}^{(2)}$ and of $\dot{\mathbf{U}}$,

$$
\operatorname{tr}\left(\mathbf{T}^{(2)} \dot{\mathbf{E}}^{(2)}\right)=\operatorname{tr}\left(\mathbf{T}^{(2)} \mathbf{U} \dot{\mathbf{U}}\right)=\operatorname{tr}\left[\frac{1}{2}\left(\mathbf{T}^{(2)} \mathbf{U}+\mathbf{U} \mathbf{T}^{(2)}\right) \dot{\mathbf{U}}\right]
$$

This motivates the definition of the Biot stress tensor $\mathbf{T}^{(1)}$, conjugate to the strain tensor $\mathbf{E}^{(1)} \equiv \mathbf{U}-\mathbf{I}$, as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{T}^{(1)}=\frac{1}{2}\left(\mathbf{T}^{(2)} \mathbf{U}+\mathbf{U} \mathbf{T}^{(2)}\right) \tag{2.34}
\end{equation*}
$$

which, by using the polar decomposition (1.35), may also be written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{T}^{(1)}=\frac{1}{2}\left(\mathbf{S R}+\mathbf{R}^{T} \mathbf{S}^{T}\right) \tag{2.35}
\end{equation*}
$$

We now have the connections

$$
\begin{equation*}
J \operatorname{tr}(\sigma \mathbf{D})=\operatorname{tr}(\mathbf{S} \dot{\mathbf{F}})=\operatorname{tr}\left(\mathbf{T}^{(2)} \dot{\mathbf{E}}^{(2)}\right)=\operatorname{tr}\left(\mathbf{T}^{(1)} \dot{\mathbf{E}}^{(1)}\right) \tag{2.36}
\end{equation*}
$$

More generally, the (symmetric) stress tensor $\mathbf{T}^{(m)}$ conjugate to the strain tensor $\mathbf{E}^{(m)} \equiv\left(\mathbf{U}^{m}-\mathbf{I}\right) / m$ discussed in Section 1.7.1 may be defined via the identity

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{tr}\left(\mathbf{T}^{(m)} \dot{\mathbf{E}}^{(m)}\right)=\operatorname{tr}\left(\mathbf{T}^{(1)} \dot{\mathbf{E}}^{(1)}\right)=\operatorname{tr}\left(\mathbf{T}^{(1)} \dot{\mathbf{U}}\right) \tag{2.37}
\end{equation*}
$$

and it should be noted that this definition is independent of any material constitutive law.

## Chapter 3

## Constitutive equations

### 3.1. Introduction

So far, we have the following equations governing the motion of a continuous body:
equation of mass conservation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{\rho}+\rho \operatorname{div} \mathbf{v}=0 \tag{3.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

equation of motion

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{div} \sigma+\rho \mathbf{b}=\rho \dot{\mathbf{v}} ; \tag{3.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

equation of angular momentum balance

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{T}=\boldsymbol{\sigma} \tag{3.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

These provide 7 scalar equations for 13 scalar fields $-\rho, \mathbf{v}$ ( 3 components), $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$ ( 9 components) with the body force $\mathbf{b}$ regarded as known. Equivalently, given (3.3), equations (3.1) and (3.2) provide 4 equations for 10 scalar fields $-\rho, \mathbf{v}$ (3 components), $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$ ( 6 components).

The missing 6 equations are provided in the form of constitutive equations, which give expressions for the 6 components of $\sigma$ in terms of kinematical quantities, as we now describe.

It is assumed that at time $t$ the stress is uniquely determined by the motion $\boldsymbol{\chi}$, i.e. $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$ is a function (more generally functional) of $\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{F}, \mathbf{L}, \ldots$, and
possibly also higher gradients of the deformation. We then have 10 equations for 10 unknowns, and, by substituting the constitutive equations into (3.1) and (3.2) we arrive at 4 equations for $\rho$ and $\mathbf{v}$, and (3.3) will be satisfied automatically. We now illustrate the general principles involved in the development of constitutive equations by focussing on the case of homogeneous elastic materials, for which $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$ depends only on $\mathbf{F}$. (For an inhomogeneous material there is, additionally, explicit dependence on $\mathbf{X}$.)

### 3.2. Elastic materials

The constitutive equation for an elastic material is written in the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma=\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{F}) \tag{3.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathbf{g}$ is a symmetric tensor-valued function, defined on the space of deformation gradients $\mathbf{F}$. Equation (3.4) states that the stress in $B_{t}$ at a point $\mathbf{X}$ depends only on the deformation gradient at $\mathbf{X}$ and not on the history of deformation, and, in particular, it is independent of the path of deformation taken to reach the point $\mathbf{F}$.

When the stress is removed the deformation returns to its original value (that in $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ ), so that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{I})=\mathbf{O} \tag{3.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

i.e. the undeformed configuration is free of stress. In some situations it will be necessary to relax this condition, but it is adopted here for the time being. We refer to $\mathbf{g}$ as the (Cauchy stress) response function of the material relative to $\mathrm{B}_{r}$. It should be emphasized that, in general, the form of $\mathbf{g}$ depends on the choice of reference configuration.

### 3.3. Objectivity

Suppose that a rigid-body motion

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{x}^{*}=\mathbf{Q}(t) \mathbf{x}+\mathbf{c}(t) \tag{3.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

is superimposed on the motion $\mathbf{x}=\boldsymbol{\chi}(\mathbf{X}, t)$. Then, the resulting deformation gradient, $\mathbf{F}^{*}$ say, is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{F}^{*}=\mathbf{Q F} \tag{3.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

In index notation, this may be proved as follows. Note first that, since

$$
x_{i}^{*}=Q_{i p} x_{p}+c_{i}
$$

we obtain

$$
\frac{\partial x_{i}^{*}}{\partial x_{k}}=Q_{i p} \frac{\partial x_{p}}{\partial x_{k}}=Q_{i p} \delta_{p k}=Q_{i k}
$$

and hence

$$
F_{i j}^{*}=\frac{\partial x_{i}^{*}}{\partial X_{j}}=\frac{\partial x_{i}^{*}}{\partial x_{k}} \frac{\partial x_{k}}{\partial X_{j}}=Q_{i k} F_{k j}
$$

For an elastic material with response function $\mathbf{g}$, the stress tensor, $\sigma^{*}$ say, associated with the deformation gradient $\mathbf{F}^{*}$ is

$$
\sigma^{*}=\mathbf{g}\left(\mathbf{F}^{*}\right)
$$

We now determine how $\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{*}$ is related to $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$. Under the rotation $\mathbf{Q}$ the unit normal $\mathbf{n}$ to $\partial R_{t}$ becomes $\mathbf{n}^{*}=\mathbf{Q n}$ and the traction vector $\mathbf{t}$ becomes $\mathbf{t}^{*}=$ Qt. Since $\mathbf{t}=\boldsymbol{\sigma} \mathbf{n}, \mathbf{t}^{*}=\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{*} \mathbf{n}^{*}$ we obtain

$$
\mathrm{Q} \sigma \mathrm{n}=\sigma^{*} \mathrm{Qn}
$$

This holds for arbitrary $\mathbf{n}$ and hence $\mathbf{Q} \boldsymbol{\sigma}=\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{*} \mathbf{Q}$, i.e.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{*}=\mathbf{Q} \boldsymbol{\sigma} \mathbf{Q}^{T} \tag{3.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

The response function $\mathbf{g}$ must therefore satisfy the invariance requirement

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{g}\left(\mathbf{F}^{*}\right) \equiv \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{Q F})=\mathbf{Q} \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{F}) \mathbf{Q}^{T} \tag{3.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

for each $\mathbf{F}$ and all rotations $\mathbf{Q}$. This expresses the fact that the constitutive law (3.4) is objective. In essence, this means that material properties are independent of superimposed rigid-body motions. It can also be interpreted in terms of observers. In that case, rather than representing a superimposed rigid motion equation, (3.6) is treated as an observer transformation. We refer to Ogden [18] for discussion of this latter approach. For the elastic materials discussed here the consequences of the two interpretations are identical, but in general this may not be the case for other materials. The difference is quite subtle and has generated some controversy in the literature. For a recent account of the topic we refer to Murdoch [14].

Definition. Let $\phi, \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{T}$ be scalar, vector and (second-order) tensor fields defined on $\mathrm{B}_{t}$, i.e. they are Eulerian in character. Let $\phi^{*}, \mathbf{u}^{*}, \mathbf{T}^{*}$ be the corresponding fields defined on $\mathrm{B}_{t}^{*}$, where $\mathrm{B}_{t}^{*}$ is obtained from $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ by the rigid motion $\mathbf{x}^{*}=\mathbf{Q} \mathbf{x}+\mathbf{c}$. The fields are said to be objective if, for all such motions,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi^{*}=\phi, \quad \mathbf{u}^{*}=\mathbf{Q} \mathbf{u}, \quad \mathbf{T}^{*}=\mathbf{Q T Q}^{T} \tag{3.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

## Example

If $\phi$ is an objective scalar field then $\operatorname{grad} \phi$ is an objective vector field. We note that, in components,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& (\operatorname{grad} \phi)_{i}^{*}=\left(\operatorname{grad}^{*} \phi^{*}\right)_{i}=\left(\operatorname{grad}^{*} \phi\right)_{i} \quad\left(\text { since } \phi^{*}=\phi\right) \\
& =\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial x_{i}^{*}}=\frac{\partial \phi}{\partial x_{k}} \frac{\partial x_{k}}{\partial x_{i}^{*}}
\end{aligned}
$$

Next, since $\mathbf{x}^{*}=\mathbf{Q} \mathbf{x}+\mathbf{c}$, it follows that $\mathbf{x}=\mathbf{Q}^{T} \mathbf{x}^{*}-\mathbf{Q}^{T} \mathbf{c}$, or, in components,

$$
x_{k}=Q_{p k} x_{p}^{*}-Q_{p k} c_{p}
$$

Hence

$$
\frac{\partial x_{k}}{\partial x_{i}^{*}}=Q_{p k} \frac{\partial x_{p}^{*}}{\partial x_{i}^{*}}=Q_{p k} \delta_{p i}=Q_{i k}
$$

which leads to

$$
(\operatorname{grad} \phi)_{i}^{*}=Q_{i k}(\operatorname{grad} \phi)_{k},
$$

i.e. $(\operatorname{grad} \phi)^{*}=\mathbf{Q}(\operatorname{grad} \phi)$. Thus, $\operatorname{grad} \phi$ is an objective vector.

## Example

Let

$$
\mathbf{x}^{*} \equiv \chi^{*}(\mathbf{X}, t)=\mathbf{Q}(t) \chi(\mathbf{X}, t)+\mathbf{c}(t)
$$

Then

$$
\mathbf{v}^{*} \equiv \frac{\partial \chi^{*}}{\partial t}=\mathbf{Q} \mathbf{v}+\dot{\mathbf{Q}} \mathbf{x}+\dot{\mathbf{c}}
$$

Since $\mathbf{v}^{*} \neq \mathbf{Q v}$ it follows that the velocity is not an objective vector. Similarly, for the acceleration,

$$
\mathbf{a}^{*} \equiv \frac{\partial^{2} \chi^{*}}{\partial t^{2}}=\mathbf{Q} \mathbf{a}+2 \dot{\mathbf{Q}} \mathbf{v}+\ddot{\mathbf{Q}} \mathbf{x}+\ddot{\mathbf{c}}
$$

### 3.4. Material symmetry

Let $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$ be the stress in configuration $\mathrm{B}_{t}$, and let $\mathbf{F}, \mathbf{F}^{\prime}$ be the deformation gradients in $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ relative to the reference configurations $\mathrm{B}_{r}, \mathrm{~B}_{r}^{\prime}$ respectively, as depicted in Fig. 3.1. We denote by $\mathbf{g}$ and $\mathbf{g}^{\prime}$ the response functions relative to $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ and $\mathrm{B}_{r}^{\prime}$, respectively, so that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma=\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{F})=\mathbf{g}^{\prime}\left(\mathbf{F}^{\prime}\right) \tag{3.11}
\end{equation*}
$$



Figure 3.1. Paths of deformation with deformation gradients $\mathbf{F}$ and $\mathbf{F}^{\prime}$ from reference configurations $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ and $\mathrm{B}_{r}^{\prime}$, which are connected by deformation gradient P.

Let $\mathbf{P}=\operatorname{Grad} \mathbf{X}^{\prime}$ be the deformation gradient of $\mathrm{B}_{r}^{\prime}$ relative to $\mathrm{B}_{r}$, where $\mathbf{X}^{\prime}$ is the position vector of a point in $\mathrm{B}_{r}^{\prime}$. Then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{F}=\mathbf{F}^{\prime} \mathbf{P} \tag{3.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

To prove (3.12), we use index notation. We have

$$
F_{i j}=\frac{\partial x_{i}}{\partial X_{j}}=\frac{\partial x_{i}}{\partial X_{k}^{\prime}} \frac{\partial X_{k}^{\prime}}{\partial X_{j}}=F_{i k}^{\prime} P_{k j}
$$

Substitution of (3.12) into (3.11) then gives

$$
\mathbf{g}\left(\mathbf{F}^{\prime} \mathbf{P}\right)=\mathbf{g}^{\prime}\left(\mathbf{F}^{\prime}\right)
$$

In general, the response of the material relative to $\mathrm{B}_{r}^{\prime}$ differs from that relative to $\mathrm{B}_{r}$, i.e. $\mathbf{g}^{\prime} \neq \mathbf{g}$. However, for certain $\mathbf{P}$ we may have $\mathbf{g}^{\prime}=\mathbf{g}$, in which case

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{g}\left(\mathbf{F}^{\prime} \mathbf{P}\right)=\mathbf{g}\left(\mathbf{F}^{\prime}\right) \tag{3.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

for all deformation gradients $\mathbf{F}^{\prime}$ and for all such $\mathbf{P}$. Equation (3.11) then gives

$$
\sigma=\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{F})=\mathbf{g}\left(\mathbf{F}^{\prime}\right)
$$

and, in order to calculate $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$, it is not necessary to distinguish between $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ and $\mathrm{B}_{r}^{\prime}$.

The set of tensors $\mathbf{P}$ for which (3.13) holds defines the symmetry of the material relative to $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ - the larger the set the more symmetry there is. An example is provided by the structure of a cubic crystal, which has certain rotational symmetry.

Let $\mathcal{G}$ denote the set of (invertible) second-order tensors, denoted $\mathbf{H}$, such that, in line with (3.13),

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{F H})=\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{F}) \tag{3.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

for all deformation gradients $\mathbf{F}$.
Then $\mathcal{G}$ is a multiplicative group, called the symmetry group of the material relative to $\mathrm{B}_{r}$.

To show this we note that if $\mathbf{H}_{1}, \mathbf{H}_{2} \in \mathcal{G}$ then, by application of (3.14) for different $\mathbf{F}$ and $\mathbf{H}$,

$$
\mathbf{g}\left(\mathbf{F H}_{1} \mathbf{H}_{2}\right)=\mathbf{g}\left(\mathbf{F H}_{1}\right)=\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{F})
$$

and hence $\mathbf{H}_{1} \mathbf{H}_{2} \in \mathcal{G}$ (closure); if $\mathbf{H} \in \mathcal{G}$ then

$$
\mathbf{g}\left(\mathbf{F H}^{-1}\right)=\mathbf{g}\left(\mathbf{F H}^{-1} \mathbf{H}\right)=\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{F})
$$

and hence $\mathbf{H}^{-1} \in \mathcal{G}$ (inverse); and $\mathbf{I} \in \mathcal{G}$ since $\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{F I})=\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{F})$ (identity). Thus, the requirements of closure, inverse and identity for a group are satisfied.

### 3.4.1. Important example: isotropy

If $\mathcal{G}$ is the proper orthogonal group then the material is said to be isotropic relative to $\mathrm{B}_{r}$, and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{F Q})=\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{F}) \tag{3.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

for all proper orthogonal $\mathbf{Q}$ (for every deformation gradient $\mathbf{F}$ ). Physically, this means that the response of a small specimen of material cut from $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ is independent of its orientation in $\mathrm{B}_{r}$.

### 3.4.2. Noll's rule

In general, the symmetry group changes with a change in reference configuration. Let $\mathbf{P}$ be the deformation gradient $\mathrm{B}_{r} \rightarrow \mathrm{~B}_{r}^{\prime}$. If $\mathcal{G}$ is the symmetry group of the material relative to $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ and $\mathcal{G}^{\prime}$ that relative to $\mathrm{B}_{r}^{\prime}$ then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{G}^{\prime}=\mathbf{P} \mathcal{G} \mathbf{P}^{-1} . \tag{3.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

To show this let $\mathbf{g}$ and $\mathbf{g}^{\prime}$ be the response functions relative to $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ and $\mathrm{B}_{r}^{\prime}$ respectively. Then

$$
\begin{gathered}
\mathbf{g}^{\prime}\left(\mathbf{F}^{\prime}\right)=\mathbf{g}\left(\mathbf{F}^{\prime} \mathbf{P}\right)=\mathbf{g}\left(\mathbf{F}^{\prime} \mathbf{P H}\right) \quad(\text { since } \mathbf{H} \in \mathcal{G}) \\
=\mathbf{g}\left(\mathbf{F}^{\prime} \mathbf{P} \mathbf{H} \mathbf{P}^{-1} \mathbf{P}\right)=\mathbf{g}^{\prime}\left(\mathbf{F}^{\prime} \mathbf{P} \mathbf{H P}^{-1}\right),
\end{gathered}
$$

and hence $\mathbf{P H P} \mathbf{P}^{-1} \in \mathcal{G}^{\prime}$, i.e. $\mathbf{H} \in \mathcal{G}$ if and only if $\mathbf{P H P}{ }^{-1} \in \mathcal{G}^{\prime}$. Equation (3.16) is known as Noll's rule.

If $\mathbf{P}$ is a rotation and $\mathcal{G}$ corresponds to isotropy, then $\mathcal{G}^{\prime}=\mathcal{G}$. We now focus on isotropic materials, for which purpose we require some further results from tensor algebra.

### 3.5. Isotropic functions of a second-order tensor

Definition. The scalar function $\phi(\mathbf{T})$ of a symmetric second-order tensor $\mathbf{T}$ is said to be an isotropic function of $\mathbf{T}$ if

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi\left(\mathbf{Q T Q}^{T}\right)=\phi(\mathbf{T}) \tag{3.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

for all orthogonal tensors $\mathbf{Q}$. We remark that the notion of an isotropic function is different from that of an isotropic tensor.

An isotropic scalar-valued function of $\mathbf{T}$ is also called a scalar invariant of $\mathbf{T}$. We may check that the principal invariants $I_{1}, I_{2}, I_{3}$ of $\mathbf{T}$ are scalar invariants in accordance with (3.17), as follows. For example, with $I_{1}=\operatorname{tr}(\mathbf{T})$ we see that, since $\mathbf{Q}$ is orthogonal,

$$
\operatorname{tr}\left(\mathbf{Q} \mathbf{T} \mathbf{Q}^{T}\right)=\operatorname{tr}\left(\mathbf{Q}^{T} \mathbf{Q} \mathbf{T}\right)=\operatorname{tr}(\mathbf{T})
$$

while, for $I_{3}=\operatorname{det}(\mathbf{T})$,

$$
\operatorname{det}\left(\mathbf{Q} \mathbf{T} \mathbf{Q}^{T}\right)=(\operatorname{det} \mathbf{Q})(\operatorname{det} \mathbf{T})\left(\operatorname{det} \mathbf{Q}^{T}\right)=\operatorname{det} \mathbf{T}
$$

and similarly for $I_{2}$.

Theorem 3.1. $\phi(\mathbf{T})$ is a scalar invariant if and only if it is expressible as a function of $I_{1}, I_{2}, I_{3}$.

## Sketch proof

It is sufficient to consider $\mathbf{T}$ written in spectral form

$$
\mathbf{T}=\sum_{i=1}^{3} t_{i} \mathbf{e}_{i}^{\prime} \otimes \mathbf{e}_{i}^{\prime}
$$

where $t_{i}$ are the eigenvalues of $\mathbf{T}$. Since $\phi\left(\mathbf{Q T Q}^{T}\right)=\phi(\mathbf{T})$ for arbitrary orthogonal $\mathbf{Q}$ we conclude that $\phi$ depends on $\mathbf{T}$ only through its eigenvalues, and we may write

$$
\phi(\mathbf{T}) \equiv \phi\left(t_{1}, t_{2}, t_{3}\right)
$$

with

$$
\phi\left(t_{1}, t_{2}, t_{3}\right)=\phi\left(t_{1}, t_{3}, t_{2}\right)=\phi\left(t_{2}, t_{1}, t_{3}\right) .
$$

But $t_{1}, t_{2}, t_{3}$ are the (real) roots of the cubic

$$
t^{3}-I_{1} t^{2}+I_{2} t-I_{3}=0
$$

and are therefore functions of the coefficients $I_{1}, I_{2}, I_{3}$. Hence $\phi$ depends only on $I_{1}, I_{2}, I_{3}$ or, equivalently, it depends symmetrically on $t_{1}, t_{2}, t_{3}$. We refer to [18] for a more detailed proof of this and the following theorems.

Let $\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{T})$ be a symmetric second-order tensor function of $\mathbf{T}$.
Definition. $\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{T})$ is said to be an isotropic tensor function of $\mathbf{T}$ if

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{G}\left(\mathbf{Q T} \mathbf{Q}^{T}\right)=\mathbf{Q} \mathbf{G}(\mathbf{T}) \mathbf{Q}^{T} \tag{3.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

for all orthogonal $\mathbf{Q}$.
A specific example of a function satisfying (3.18) is as follows. Let $\phi_{0}, \phi_{1}$, $\ldots, \phi_{N}$ be scalar invariants of $\mathbf{T}$. Then

$$
\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{T})=\phi_{0} \mathbf{I}+\phi_{1} \mathbf{T}+\cdots+\phi_{N} \mathbf{T}^{N}
$$

is an isotropic function of $\mathbf{T}$.
Theorem 3.2. If $\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{T})$ is isotropic then its eigenvalues are scalar invariants of $\mathbf{T}$.

## Sketch proof

Let $\alpha(\mathbf{T})$ be a principal value of $\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{T})$, so that

$$
\operatorname{det}[\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{T})-\alpha(\mathbf{T}) \mathbf{I}]=0
$$

Similarly, $\alpha\left(\mathbf{Q T Q} \mathbf{Q}^{T}\right)$ is the corresponding principal value of $\mathbf{G}\left(\mathbf{Q T} \mathbf{Q}^{T}\right)$, so that

$$
\operatorname{det}\left[\mathbf{G}\left(\mathbf{Q T} \mathbf{Q}^{T}\right)-\alpha\left(\mathbf{Q T} \mathbf{Q}^{T}\right) \mathbf{I}\right]=0
$$

Using (3.18) we may re-write this as

$$
\operatorname{det}\left[\mathbf{Q} \mathbf{G}(\mathbf{T}) \mathbf{Q}^{T}-\alpha\left(\mathbf{Q} \mathbf{T} \mathbf{Q}^{T}\right) \mathbf{I}\right]=0,
$$

and hence, noting that this may also be written

$$
(\operatorname{det} \mathbf{Q}) \operatorname{det}\left[\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{T})-\alpha\left(\mathbf{Q T} \mathbf{Q}^{T}\right) \mathbf{I}\right]\left(\operatorname{det} \mathbf{Q}^{T}\right)=0
$$

we deduce that

$$
\operatorname{det}\left[\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{T})-\alpha\left(\mathbf{Q} \mathbf{T} \mathbf{Q}^{T}\right) \mathbf{I}\right]=0 .
$$

Thus, $\alpha\left(\mathbf{Q T Q}^{T}\right)$ is a principal value of $\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{T})$ for all orthogonal $\mathbf{Q}$ and hence

$$
\alpha\left(\mathbf{Q T Q}^{T}\right)=\alpha(\mathbf{T})
$$

for all orthogonal $\mathbf{Q}$, i.e. the principal values are scalar invariants of $\mathbf{T}$.
Theorem 3.3. Every eigenvector of $\mathbf{T}$ is an eigenvector of the isotropic function $\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{T})$.

## Proof

Let $t_{1}, t_{2}, t_{3}$ be eigenvalues of $\mathbf{T}$ corresponding to (orthonormal) eigenvectors $\mathbf{m}_{1}, \mathbf{m}_{2}, \mathbf{m}_{3}$. Then

$$
\mathbf{T}=t_{1} \mathbf{m}_{1} \otimes \mathbf{m}_{1}+t_{2} \mathbf{m}_{2} \otimes \mathbf{m}_{2}+t_{3} \mathbf{m}_{3} \otimes \mathbf{m}_{3}
$$

Suppose that

$$
\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{T}) \mathbf{m}_{1}=\alpha \mathbf{m}_{1}+\beta \mathbf{m}_{2}+\gamma \mathbf{m}_{3}
$$

Let $\mathbf{Q}$ be a rotation about $\mathbf{m}_{1}$ through $\pi$, so that

$$
\mathbf{Q} \mathbf{m}_{1}=\mathbf{m}_{1}, \quad \mathbf{Q} \mathbf{m}_{2}=-\mathbf{m}_{2}, \quad \mathbf{Q} \mathbf{m}_{3}=-\mathbf{m}_{3}
$$

Then, it follows that

$$
\mathbf{Q T Q}^{T}=\mathbf{T}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{T}) \mathbf{m}_{1} & =\mathbf{G}\left(\mathbf{Q} \mathbf{T} \mathbf{Q}^{T}\right) \mathbf{m}_{1}=\mathbf{Q} \mathbf{G}(\mathbf{T}) \mathbf{Q}^{T} \mathbf{m}_{1} \quad \text { (by isotropy) } \\
& =\mathbf{Q} \mathbf{G}(\mathbf{T}) \mathbf{m}_{1}=\mathbf{Q}\left(\alpha \mathbf{m}_{1}+\beta \mathbf{m}_{2}+\gamma \mathbf{m}_{3}\right),
\end{aligned}
$$

i.e.

$$
\alpha \mathbf{m}_{1}+\beta \mathbf{m}_{2}+\gamma \mathbf{m}_{3}=\alpha \mathbf{m}_{1}-\beta \mathbf{m}_{2}-\gamma \mathbf{m}_{3}
$$

and hence, since $\mathbf{m}_{1}, \mathbf{m}_{2}, \mathbf{m}_{3}$ are linearly independent, $\beta=\gamma=0$. Thus, $\mathbf{m}_{1}$ is an eigenvector of $\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{T})$. Similarly for $\mathbf{m}_{2}$ and $\mathbf{m}_{3}$.

Theorem 3.4. A symmetric second-order tensor-valued function $\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{T})$ of the second-order symmetric tensor $\mathbf{T}$ is isotropic if and only if it has the representation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{T})=\phi_{0} \mathbf{I}+\phi_{1} \mathbf{T}+\phi_{2} \mathbf{T}^{2} \tag{3.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\phi_{0}, \phi_{1}, \phi_{2}$ are functions of $I_{1}, I_{2}, I_{3}$, i.e. they are scalar invariants of $\mathbf{T}$.

## Sketch proof

If (3.19) holds then $\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{T})$ is clearly isotropic. On the other hand, if $\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{T})$ satisfies (3.18) then we need to show that (3.19) follows.

We know from Theorem 3.3 that $\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{T})$ is coaxial with $\mathbf{T}$, and from Theorem 3.2 that the principal values of $\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{T})$ are invariants of $\mathbf{T}$. Let $t_{i}$ and $g_{i}$ be the principal values of $\mathbf{T}$ and $\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{T})$ and suppose that $t_{1}, t_{2}, t_{3}$ are distinct. Consider the three equations

$$
\begin{equation*}
\phi_{0}+\phi_{1} t_{i}+\phi_{2} t_{i}^{2}=g_{i}, \quad i \in\{1,2,3\} \tag{3.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

for the three unknowns $\phi_{0}, \phi_{1}, \phi_{2}$. The solutions $\phi_{0}, \phi_{1}, \phi_{2}$ are functions of $t_{i}, g_{i}(i=1,2,3)$ which, from Theorems 3.1 and 3.2 , are themselves functions only of $I_{1}, I_{2}, I_{3}$. Thus, $\phi_{0}, \phi_{1}, \phi_{2}$ are uniquely defined by (3.20) as invariants of $\mathbf{T}$. Since $\mathbf{G}(\mathbf{T})$ and $\mathbf{T}$ are coaxial equation (3.20) is just (3.19) referred to principal axes. Hence, by multiplying equation (3.20) by $\mathbf{m}_{i} \otimes \mathbf{m}_{i}$ and summing over $i$, we obtain (3.19). If $t_{1}, t_{2}, t_{3}$ are not distinct this proof requires modification, but we omit the details.

### 3.6. Isotropic elasticity

- From the definition (3.15) of isotropy we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma=\mathrm{g}(\mathbf{F})=\mathrm{g}(\mathbf{F Q}) \tag{3.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

for all proper orthogonal $\mathbf{Q}$ and each deformation gradient $\mathbf{F}$.
The choice $\mathbf{Q}=\mathbf{R}^{T}$ and use of the polar decomposition $\mathbf{F}=\mathbf{V R}$ in (3.21) gives

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma=\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{V}) \tag{3.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now,

$$
\mathbf{Q g}(\mathbf{V}) \mathbf{Q}^{T}=\mathbf{Q g}(\mathbf{F}) \mathbf{Q}^{T}=\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{Q F})
$$

and, with $\mathbf{F}$ replaced by $\mathbf{Q F}$ and $\mathbf{Q}$ by $\mathbf{P}^{T}$ in (3.21),

$$
\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{Q F})=\mathbf{g}\left(\mathbf{Q F P}^{T}\right)
$$

for all proper orthogonal $\mathbf{P}$ and $\mathbf{Q}$. Hence

$$
\mathbf{Q g}(\mathbf{V}) \mathbf{Q}^{T}=\mathbf{g}\left(\mathbf{Q F P}^{T}\right)
$$

By choosing $\mathbf{P}=\mathbf{Q R}$ and writing $\mathbf{F}=\mathbf{V R}$ we then obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{Q g}(\mathbf{V}) \mathbf{Q}^{T}=\mathbf{g}\left(\mathbf{Q V Q} \mathbf{Q}^{T}\right) \tag{3.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

for all proper orthogonal $\mathbf{Q}$. In fact, since $\mathbf{Q}$ occurs twice on each side of (3.23), allowing $\mathbf{Q}$ to be improper orthogonal does not affect (3.23), which then states that $\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{V})$ is an isotropic function of $\mathbf{V}$ in accordance with the definition (3.18). Thus, the response function $\mathbf{g}$ has all the properties associated with the isotropic tensor function $\mathbf{G}$ discussed in Section 3.5.

In particular, for an isotropic elastic material, $\boldsymbol{\sigma}=\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{V})$ is coaxial with V, i.e. with the Eulerian principal axes, and, from Theorem 3.4, we therefore have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{\sigma}=\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{V})=\phi_{0} \mathbf{I}+\phi_{1} \mathbf{V}+\phi_{2} \mathbf{V}^{2} \tag{3.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\phi_{0}, \phi_{1}, \phi_{2}$ are invariants of $\mathbf{V}$, i.e. functions of

$$
I_{1}=\lambda_{1}+\lambda_{2}+\lambda_{3}, \quad I_{2}=\lambda_{2} \lambda_{3}+\lambda_{3} \lambda_{1}+\lambda_{1} \lambda_{2}, \quad I_{3}=\lambda_{1} \lambda_{2} \lambda_{3} .
$$

Alternatively, we may write

$$
\boldsymbol{\sigma}=\sum_{i=1}^{3} \sigma_{i} \mathbf{v}^{(i)} \otimes \mathbf{v}^{(i)}
$$

where

$$
\sigma_{i}=\phi_{0}+\phi_{1} \lambda_{i}+\phi_{2} \lambda_{i}^{2} \quad i \in\{1,2,3\} .
$$

### 3.7. Hyperelastic materials

Recall, from Section 2.6, that the energy balance equation can be written in the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{R_{t}} \rho \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{v} d v+\int_{\partial R_{t}} \mathbf{t} \cdot \mathbf{v} d a=\frac{d}{d t} \int_{R_{t}} \frac{1}{2} \rho \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v} d v+\int_{R_{t}} \operatorname{tr}(\boldsymbol{\sigma} \mathbf{L}) d v . \tag{3.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

If there is no dissipation then the work done by the body and surface forces is converted into kinetic energy and stored elastic energy. In this connection an interpretation for the second term on the right-hand side of (3.25) is needed.

Write

$$
\int_{R_{t}} \operatorname{tr}(\sigma \mathbf{L}) d v=\int_{R_{r}} J \operatorname{tr}(\sigma \mathbf{L}) d V
$$

Then, the integrand $J \operatorname{tr}(\sigma \mathbf{L})$ is interpreted as the rate of increase of elastic energy per unit volume in $\mathrm{B}_{r}$.

This prompts the introduction of the elastic stored energy $W(\mathbf{F})$ per unit volume in $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial}{\partial t} W(\mathbf{F})=J \operatorname{tr}(\sigma \mathbf{L}) \tag{3.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that $W(\mathbf{F})$ is also referred to as the strain energy or potential energy (per unit volume in $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ ). Then, we have

$$
\int_{R_{t}} \operatorname{tr}(\boldsymbol{\sigma} \mathbf{L}) d v=\int_{R_{r}} \frac{\partial}{\partial t} W(\mathbf{F}) d V=\frac{d}{d t} \int_{R_{r}} W(\mathbf{F}) d V,
$$

and

$$
\int_{R_{r}} W(\mathbf{F}) d V
$$

is the total elastic strain energy in the region $R_{r}$. The right-hand side of (3.25) can now be written as

$$
\left.\frac{d}{d t} \text { (kinetic energy }+ \text { strain energy }\right)
$$

Since $W$ depends only on $\mathbf{F}$, we have

$$
\frac{\partial}{\partial t} W(\mathbf{F})=\frac{\partial W}{\partial F_{i j}} \frac{\partial F_{i j}}{\partial t} \equiv \operatorname{tr}\left(\frac{\partial W}{\partial \mathbf{F}} \dot{\mathbf{F}}\right)
$$

where $\partial W / \partial \mathbf{F}$ is the second-order tensor with components defined by the convention

$$
\left(\frac{\partial W}{\partial \mathbf{F}}\right)_{j i}=\frac{\partial W}{\partial F_{i j}}
$$

Since $\dot{\mathbf{F}}=\mathbf{L F}$, we obtain

$$
\frac{\partial W}{\partial t}=\operatorname{tr}\left(\frac{\partial W}{\partial \mathbf{F}} \mathbf{L F}\right)=\operatorname{tr}\left(\mathbf{F} \frac{\partial W}{\partial \mathbf{F}} \mathbf{L}\right)
$$

and comparison of this with (3.26) shows that

$$
\begin{equation*}
J \boldsymbol{\sigma}=\mathbf{F} \frac{\partial W}{\partial \mathbf{F}} \tag{3.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

which provides a formula for $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$ in terms of $W(\mathbf{F})$.
Since $\sigma=\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{F})$, we deduce that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{g}(\mathbf{F})=(\operatorname{det} \mathbf{F})^{-1} \mathbf{F} \frac{\partial W}{\partial \mathbf{F}} \tag{3.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

and, by recalling the connection (2.28) between the Cauchy stress $\sigma$ and the nominal stress $\mathbf{S}$, we obtain the simple formula

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{S}=\frac{\partial W}{\partial \mathbf{F}}, \quad S_{j i}=\frac{\partial W}{\partial F_{i j}} \tag{3.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

for the nominal stress.
We now write

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{S}=J \mathbf{F}^{-1} \boldsymbol{\sigma}=(\operatorname{det} \mathbf{F}) \mathbf{F}^{-1} \mathbf{g}(\mathbf{F}) \equiv \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{F}) \tag{3.30}
\end{equation*}
$$

which defines $\mathbf{h}$, the response function associated with $\mathbf{S}$ (relative to $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ ).
It is easy to show that objectivity implies that

$$
\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{Q F})=\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{F}) \mathbf{Q}^{T}
$$

for all proper orthogonal $\mathbf{Q}$, and that, in addition, material isotropy implies that

$$
\mathbf{h}\left(\mathbf{F Q}^{T}\right)=\mathbf{Q h}(\mathbf{F})
$$

for all orthogonal $\mathbf{Q}$. From the polar decomposition theorem it may then be deduced that for an isotropic material

$$
\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{F})=\mathbf{R}^{T} \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{V})=\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{U}) \mathbf{R}^{T}
$$

and that $\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{U})$ is symmetric. We emphasize, however, that if the material is not isotropic then $\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{U})$ is not in general symmetric (although it may be for some particular deformations).

We remark that $W(\mathbf{F})$ represents the work done (per unit volume at $\mathbf{X}$ ) by the stress in deforming the material from $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ to $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ (i.e. from I to $\mathbf{F}$ ) and is independent of the path taken in deformation space.

An elastic material which possesses a strain-energy function $W$ is said to be a hyperelastic or Green elastic material.

Objectivity of $W$. Since $W$ is a scalar function objectivity requires that it is unaffected by a superimposed rigid-body rotation after deformation, i.e.

$$
\begin{equation*}
W(\mathbf{Q F})=W(\mathbf{F}) \tag{3.31}
\end{equation*}
$$

for all rotations $\mathbf{Q}$ for each deformation gradient $\mathbf{F}$. This may also be expressed by referring to $W$ as being indifferent to observer transformations.

Isotropy of $W$. For a hyperelastic material which is isotropic relative to $\mathrm{B}_{r}, W(\mathbf{F})$ is unaffected by rotations in $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ (prior to deformation). Thus,

$$
\begin{equation*}
W\left(\mathbf{F} \mathbf{P}^{T}\right)=W(\mathbf{F}) \tag{3.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

for all rotations $\mathbf{P}$.
Setting $\mathbf{P}=\mathbf{R}, \mathbf{F}=\mathbf{V R}$ in (3.32) gives

$$
W(\mathbf{F})=W(\mathbf{V})
$$

Hence, using (3.31) and (3.32),

$$
W\left(\mathbf{Q F} \mathbf{P}^{T}\right)=W\left(\mathbf{F P}^{T}\right)=W(\mathbf{F})=W(\mathbf{V}),
$$

and setting $\mathbf{P}=\mathbf{Q R}$ then yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
W\left(\mathbf{Q} \mathbf{V Q}^{T}\right)=W(\mathbf{V}) \tag{3.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

for all orthogonal Q. Equation (3.33) states that $W$ is an isotropic scalar function of $\mathbf{V}$ in accordance with the definition (3.17).

Thus, we may regard $W$ as a function of the principal invariants $I_{1}, I_{2}, I_{3}$ of $\mathbf{V}$ or, equivalently, as a symmetric function of the principal stretches $\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \lambda_{3}$. In particular, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
W\left(\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \lambda_{3}\right)=W\left(\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{3}, \lambda_{2}\right)=W\left(\lambda_{3}, \lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}\right) \tag{3.34}
\end{equation*}
$$

for all $\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \lambda_{3} \in(0, \infty)$.
Mathematically, there is no restriction so far other than (3.34) on the form that the function $W$ may take, but the predictions of material behaviour based on the form of $W$ must make mathematical sense and must also be compatible with what is observed for real materials.

It is usual to take $W$ to be measured from the reference configuration $\mathrm{B}_{r}$, so that

$$
\begin{equation*}
W(1,1,1)=0 \tag{3.35}
\end{equation*}
$$

Furthermore, if the reference configuration is stress free then we also have the restriction $\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{I})=\mathbf{O}$ or, in terms of the derivatives of $W$ with respect to the stretches,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial W}{\partial \lambda_{i}}(1,1,1)=0, \quad i \in\{1,2,3\} . \tag{3.36}
\end{equation*}
$$

There are also basic restrictions required for $W$ to reduce to the classical (quadratic) form of strain energy when the strains are small. These restrictions are discussed in Chapter 10.

In Chapters 4 and 5 we examine stress-deformation relations for isotropic elastic materials and the application of these to the characterization of the elastic properties of rubberlike solids.

## Chapter 4

## Stress-deformation relations for an isotropic material

### 4.1. Unconstrained materials

For an isotropic material the strain-energy function is expressible as a function of the principal stretches, as in (3.34). It follows that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{W}=\sum_{i=1}^{3} \frac{\partial W}{\partial \lambda_{i}} \dot{\lambda}_{i} . \tag{4.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

But, from (3.26),

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{W}=J \operatorname{tr}(\sigma \mathbf{L})=J \operatorname{tr}(\sigma \mathbf{D}) . \tag{4.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Also, for an isotropic material, $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$ is coaxial with $\mathbf{V}$ and can be written in the spectral form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{\sigma}=\sum_{i=1}^{3} \sigma_{i} \mathbf{v}^{(i)} \otimes \mathbf{v}^{(i)} \tag{4.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Equation (4.2) can therefore be expressed as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\dot{W}=J \sum_{i=1}^{3} \sigma_{i} D_{i i} \tag{4.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $D_{i i}$ are the normal components of $\mathbf{D}$ referred to the axes $\mathbf{v}^{(i)}$. In order to obtain expressions for the principal stresses $\sigma_{i}$ in terms of the derivatives of $W$ with respect to the stretches we must compare (4.1) with (4.4). First, we need an expression for the components $D_{i i}$.

Note that by using $(1.35)_{1},(1.54)$ and $(1.59)_{1}, \mathbf{D}$ may be written in the form

$$
\mathbf{D}=\frac{1}{2} \mathbf{R}\left(\dot{\mathbf{U}} \mathbf{U}^{-1}+\mathbf{U}^{-1} \dot{\mathbf{U}}\right) \mathbf{R}^{T}
$$

and that $\mathbf{U}$ has the spectral decomposition

$$
\mathbf{U}=\sum_{i=1}^{3} \lambda_{i} \mathbf{u}^{(i)} \otimes \mathbf{u}^{(i)}
$$

from which it follows that

$$
\dot{\mathbf{U}}=\sum_{i=1}^{3}\left(\dot{\lambda}_{i} \mathbf{u}^{(i)} \otimes \mathbf{u}^{(i)}+\lambda_{i} \mathbf{u}^{(i)} \otimes \dot{\mathbf{u}}^{(i)}+\lambda_{i} \dot{\mathbf{u}}^{(i)} \otimes \mathbf{u}^{(i)}\right)
$$

Using the connection $\mathbf{v}^{(i)}=\mathbf{R u}{ }^{(i)}$ we calculate the components

$$
\begin{aligned}
D_{i i} & \equiv \mathbf{v}^{(i)} \cdot\left(\mathbf{D} \mathbf{v}^{(i)}\right)=\frac{1}{2} \mathbf{u}^{(i)} \cdot\left[\left(\dot{\mathbf{U}} \mathbf{U}^{-1}+\mathbf{U}^{-1} \dot{\mathbf{U}}\right) \mathbf{u}^{(i)}\right] \\
& =\mathbf{u}^{(i)} \cdot\left(\dot{\mathbf{U}} \mathbf{U}^{-1} \mathbf{u}^{(i)}\right)=\mathbf{u}^{(i)} \cdot\left(\dot{\mathbf{U}} \lambda_{i}^{-1} \mathbf{u}^{(i)}\right) \\
& =\lambda_{i}^{-1}\left[\mathbf{u}^{(i)} \cdot\left(\dot{\mathbf{U}} \mathbf{u}^{(i)}\right)\right]=\lambda_{i}^{-1} \dot{\lambda}_{i}
\end{aligned}
$$

in which we have used symmetry and the fact that, since $\mathbf{u}^{(i)}$ is a unit vector, $\mathbf{u}^{(i)} \cdot \dot{\mathbf{u}}^{(i)}=0$.

Comparison of (4.1) and (4.4) now gives

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{3} \frac{\partial W}{\partial \lambda_{i}} \dot{\lambda}_{i}=\sum_{i=1}^{3} J \sigma_{i} \lambda_{i}^{-1} \dot{\lambda}_{i}
$$

and hence

$$
J \lambda_{i}^{-1} \sigma_{i}=\frac{\partial W}{\partial \lambda_{i}}
$$

i.e.

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{i}=J^{-1} \lambda_{i} \frac{\partial W}{\partial \lambda_{i}}, \quad i \in\{1,2,3\} \tag{4.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
J=\lambda_{1} \lambda_{2} \lambda_{3} \tag{4.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

Expressions for $\mathbf{T}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{S}$ analogous to (4.3) can also be obtained. First we note that since $\mathbf{S}=J \mathbf{F}^{-1} \boldsymbol{\sigma}, \mathbf{F}^{-1}=\mathbf{U}^{-1} \mathbf{R}^{T}, \mathbf{R}^{T} \mathbf{v}^{(i)}=\mathbf{u}^{(i)}$ and $\mathbf{U}^{-1} \mathbf{u}^{(i)}=$ $\lambda_{i}^{-1} \mathbf{u}^{(i)}$ we may write

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{S}=\sum_{i=1}^{3} t_{i} \mathbf{u}^{(i)} \otimes \mathbf{v}^{(i)} \tag{4.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
t_{i}=J \lambda_{i}^{-1} \sigma_{i}=\frac{\partial W}{\partial \lambda_{i}} \tag{4.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

Furthermore, from Section 3.7 we see that, for an isotropic material,

$$
\mathbf{S}=\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{F})=\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{U}) \mathbf{R}^{T} \equiv \mathbf{T}^{(1)} \mathbf{R}^{T}
$$

where we recall from Section 2.7 that $\mathbf{T}^{(1)}$ is the Biot stress tensor. Hence, using (4.7) and (4.8),

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{T}^{(1)}=\sum_{i=1}^{3} t_{i} \mathbf{u}^{(i)} \otimes \mathbf{u}^{(i)} \tag{4.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

and $t_{i}$ are just the principal values of $\mathbf{T}^{(1)}$, i.e. the principal Biot stresses. If $W$ is regarded as a function of $\mathbf{U}$ then we may also write

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{T}^{(1)}=\frac{\partial W}{\partial \mathbf{U}} \tag{4.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

More generally, for the conjugate stress and strain tensors $\mathbf{T}^{(m)}$ and $\mathbf{E}^{(m)}$, we note that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{T}^{(m)}=\frac{\partial W}{\partial \mathbf{E}^{(m)}} \tag{4.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 4.2. Stress-deformation relations in terms of invariants

### 4.2.1. The invariants $I_{1}, I_{2}, I_{3}$

Instead of using the stretches $\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \lambda_{3}$ as independent measures of deformation, we now use (equivalently) the invariants $I_{1}, I_{2}, I_{3}$ defined by

$$
\begin{align*}
I_{1} & =\operatorname{tr}(\mathbf{B}) \equiv \lambda_{1}^{2}+\lambda_{2}^{2}+\lambda_{3}^{2}  \tag{4.12}\\
I_{2} & =\frac{1}{2}\left[I_{1}^{2}-\operatorname{tr}\left(\mathbf{B}^{2}\right)\right] \equiv \lambda_{2}^{2} \lambda_{3}^{2}+\lambda_{3}^{2} \lambda_{1}^{2}+\lambda_{1}^{2} \lambda_{2}^{2}  \tag{4.13}\\
I_{3} & =\operatorname{det} \mathbf{B} \equiv \lambda_{1}^{2} \lambda_{2}^{2} \lambda_{3}^{2} \equiv J^{2} \tag{4.14}
\end{align*}
$$

and we note that these are symmetric functions of the stretches. We regard the strain energy as a function of $I_{1}, I_{2}, I_{3}$ and write $\bar{W}\left(I_{1}, I_{2}, I_{3}\right)$ to represent this.

In order to obtain an expression for the nominal stress $\mathbf{S}$ we need the derivatives

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial I_{1}}{\partial \mathbf{F}}=2 \mathbf{F}^{T}, \quad \frac{\partial I_{2}}{\partial \mathbf{F}}=2 I_{1} \mathbf{F}^{T}-2 \mathbf{F}^{T} \mathbf{F} \mathbf{F}^{T}, \quad \frac{\partial I_{3}}{\partial \mathbf{F}}=2 I_{3} \mathbf{F}^{-1} \tag{4.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

and hence

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{S}=\frac{\partial \bar{W}}{\partial \mathbf{F}}=2 \bar{W}_{1} \mathbf{F}^{T}+2 \bar{W}_{2}\left(I_{1} \mathbf{F}^{T}-\mathbf{F}^{T} \mathbf{F F}^{T}\right)+2 I_{3} \bar{W}_{3} \mathbf{F}^{-1} \tag{4.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{W}_{1}=\frac{\partial \bar{W}}{\partial I_{1}}, \quad \bar{W}_{2}=\frac{\partial \bar{W}}{\partial I_{2}}, \quad \bar{W}_{3}=\frac{\partial \bar{W}}{\partial I_{3}} . \tag{4.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

The corresponding expression for the Cauchy stress is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{\sigma}=2 I_{3}^{-1 / 2}\left(\bar{W}_{1}+I_{1} \bar{W}_{2}\right) \mathbf{B}-2 I_{3}^{-1 / 2} \bar{W}_{2} \mathbf{B}^{2}+2 I_{3}^{1 / 2} \bar{W}_{3} \mathbf{I} . \tag{4.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 4.2.2. The invariants $i_{1}, i_{2}, i_{3}$

An alternative representation for the energy function and the stresses can be obtained on the basis of the principal invariants $i_{1}, i_{2}, i_{3}$ of the stretch tensor $\mathbf{V}$. These are defined by

$$
\begin{align*}
i_{1} & =\operatorname{tr}(\mathbf{V}) \equiv \lambda_{1}+\lambda_{2}+\lambda_{3}  \tag{4.19}\\
i_{2} & =\frac{1}{2}\left[i_{1}^{2}-\operatorname{tr}\left(\mathbf{V}^{2}\right)\right] \equiv \lambda_{2} \lambda_{3}+\lambda_{3} \lambda_{1}+\lambda_{1} \lambda_{2}  \tag{4.20}\\
i_{3} & =\operatorname{det} \mathbf{V} \equiv \lambda_{1} \lambda_{2} \lambda_{3} \equiv J \tag{4.21}
\end{align*}
$$

In this case we write the strain energy as $\tilde{W}\left(i_{1}, i_{2}, i_{3}\right)$ and $\mathbf{S}$ may be written

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{S}=\frac{\partial \tilde{W}}{\partial \mathbf{F}}=\tilde{W}_{1} \frac{\partial i_{1}}{\partial \mathbf{F}}+\tilde{W}_{2} \frac{\partial i_{2}}{\partial \mathbf{F}}+\tilde{W}_{3} \frac{\partial i_{3}}{\partial \mathbf{F}} \tag{4.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tilde{W}_{1}=\frac{\partial \tilde{W}}{\partial i_{1}}, \quad \tilde{W}_{2}=\frac{\partial \tilde{W}}{\partial i_{2}}, \quad \tilde{W}_{3}=\frac{\partial \tilde{W}}{\partial i_{3}} . \tag{4.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

However, expressions for $\partial i_{1} / \partial \mathbf{F}$ and $\partial i_{2} / \partial \mathbf{F}$ are not immediately forthcoming in this case. They may be obtained by making use of the connections

$$
\begin{equation*}
I_{1}=i_{1}^{2}-2 i_{2}, \quad I_{2}=i_{2}^{2}-2 i_{1} i_{3}, \quad I_{3}=i_{3}^{2} . \tag{4.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

However, this requires a lengthy set of manipulations, which are not given here. We obtain the results indirectly by first calculating $\mathbf{T}^{(1)}$ and then using the connection $\mathbf{S}=\mathbf{T}^{(1)} \mathbf{R}^{T}$ and comparing the result with (4.22).

Using (4.8) we obtain

$$
t_{i}=\tilde{W}_{1}+\left(i_{1}-\lambda_{i}\right) \tilde{W}_{2}+i_{3} \lambda_{i}^{-1} \tilde{W}_{3} .
$$

Hence,

$$
\mathbf{T}^{(1)}=\sum_{i=1}^{3} t_{i} \mathbf{u}^{(i)} \otimes \mathbf{u}^{(i)}=\tilde{W}_{1} \mathbf{I}+\tilde{W}_{2}\left(i_{1} \mathbf{I}-\mathbf{U}\right)+i_{3} \tilde{W}_{3} \mathbf{U}^{-1}
$$

and then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{S}=\mathbf{T}^{(1)} \mathbf{R}^{T}=\tilde{W}_{1} \mathbf{R}^{T}+\tilde{W}_{2}\left(i_{1} \mathbf{R}^{T}-\mathbf{F}^{T}\right)+i_{3} \tilde{W}_{3} \mathbf{F}^{-1} \tag{4.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

Comparison of (4.25) with (4.22) shows that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial i_{1}}{\partial \mathbf{F}}=\mathbf{R}^{T}, \quad \frac{\partial i_{2}}{\partial \mathbf{F}}=i_{1} \mathbf{R}^{T}-\mathbf{F}^{T}, \quad \frac{\partial i_{3}}{\partial \mathbf{F}}=i_{3} \mathbf{F}^{-1} \tag{4.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

In terms of $i_{1}, i_{2}, i_{3}$ the Cauchy stress tensor has the representation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{\sigma}=i_{3}^{-1}\left(\tilde{W}_{1}+i_{1} \tilde{W}_{2}\right) \mathbf{V}-i_{3}^{-1} \tilde{W}_{2} \mathbf{V}^{2}+\tilde{W}_{3} \mathbf{I} \tag{4.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

This may be compared directly with (3.24) to provide expressions for the coefficients $\phi_{0}, \phi_{1}, \phi_{2}$ which appear in (3.24). For a discussion of these invariants and a derivation of the above formulas we refer to Steigmann [23].

## Chapter 5

## Constrained elastic materials

### 5.1. Incompressibility

If the considered material is incompressible then the deformation gradient must satisfy the internal constraint

$$
\begin{equation*}
J \equiv \operatorname{det} \mathbf{F} \equiv \operatorname{det} \mathbf{U} \equiv \lambda_{1} \lambda_{2} \lambda_{3}=1 \tag{5.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

at each point of the material. It follows that

$$
\log \lambda_{1}+\log \lambda_{2}+\log \lambda_{3}=0
$$

and hence

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{div} \mathbf{v} \equiv \operatorname{tr}(\mathbf{D}) \equiv \frac{\dot{\lambda}_{1}}{\lambda_{1}}+\frac{\dot{\lambda}_{2}}{\lambda_{2}}+\frac{\dot{\lambda}_{3}}{\lambda_{3}}=0 . \tag{5.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Because of (5.1) the derivatives $\partial W / \partial \lambda_{i}$ are not now independent, and the equation

$$
J \sigma_{i}=\lambda_{i} \frac{\partial W}{\partial \lambda_{i}}, \quad i \in\{1,2,3\}
$$

is replaced by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{i}=\lambda_{i} \frac{\partial W}{\partial \lambda_{i}}-p, \quad i \in\{1,2,3\} \tag{5.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $p$ is an arbitrary scalar.

Justification for this is provided by noting that the rate of working of the stresses, namely

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{tr}(\boldsymbol{\sigma} \mathbf{D}) & \equiv \sum_{i=1}^{3} \sigma_{i} \lambda_{i}^{-1} \dot{\lambda}_{i}=\sum_{i=1}^{3} \frac{\partial W}{\partial \lambda_{i}} \dot{\lambda}_{i}-p\left(\frac{\dot{\lambda}_{1}}{\lambda_{1}}+\frac{\dot{\lambda}_{2}}{\lambda_{2}}+\frac{\dot{\lambda}_{3}}{\lambda_{3}}\right) \\
& =\sum_{i=1}^{3} \frac{\partial W}{\partial \lambda_{i}} \dot{\lambda}_{i}=\dot{W}
\end{aligned}
$$

is not affected by $p$. The scalar $p$ is a Lagrange multiplier in respect of the constraint (5.1), so we replace $W$ by $W-p\left(\lambda_{1} \lambda_{2} \lambda_{3}-1\right)$ and then regard this as a function of the independent variables $\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \lambda_{3}, p$.

Thus,

$$
J \sigma_{i}=\lambda_{i} \frac{\partial W}{\partial \lambda_{i}}
$$

becomes

$$
\sigma_{i}=\lambda_{i} \frac{\partial}{\partial \lambda_{i}}\left[W-p\left(\lambda_{1} \lambda_{2} \lambda_{3}-1\right)\right]=\lambda_{i} \frac{\partial W}{\partial \lambda_{i}}-p,
$$

with $\lambda_{1} \lambda_{2} \lambda_{3}$ having been set equal to 1 on the right-hand side after the differentiation has been carried out.

More generally, for a material which is not necessarily isotropic, consider the strain energy $W(\mathbf{F})$ modified to

$$
W(\mathbf{F})-p(\operatorname{det} \mathbf{F}-1)
$$

to accommodate the constraint $\operatorname{det} \mathbf{F}=1$. Then the nominal stress tensor defined by (3.29) for a compressible material is modified to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{S}=\frac{\partial W}{\partial \mathbf{F}}-p \mathbf{F}^{-1} \tag{5.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

and, from (3.30) with $J=1$, the Cauchy stress $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$ is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{\sigma}=\mathbf{F} \frac{\partial W}{\partial \mathbf{F}}-p \mathbf{I} . \tag{5.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

This shows that $p$ may be interpreted as a hydrostatic pressure.
The corresponding expression for the Biot stress tensor, with $\operatorname{det} \mathbf{U}=1$, is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{T}^{(1)}=\frac{\partial W}{\partial \mathbf{U}}-p \mathbf{U}^{-1} \tag{5.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 5.2. Stress-deformation relations

### 5.2.1. Invariants $I_{1}, I_{2}$

For an incompressible material $I_{3} \equiv 1$. Thus, for an incompressible isotropic material the dependence of the strain energy on the invariants discussed in Section 4.1.1 now reduces to a representation in terms of the two independent invariants $I_{1}$ and $I_{2}$ alone, and we write $\bar{W}\left(I_{1}, I_{2}\right)$. It follows from (5.5), on use of (4.15), that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{\sigma}=2\left(\bar{W}_{1}+I_{1} \bar{W}_{2}\right) \mathbf{B}-2 \bar{W}_{2} \mathbf{B}^{2}-p \mathbf{I} . \tag{5.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 5.2.2. Invariants $i_{1}, i_{2}$

The counterpart of (5.7) in respect of $\tilde{W}\left(i_{1}, i_{2}\right)$ (with $i_{3} \equiv 1$ ) is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{\sigma}=\left(\tilde{W}_{1}+i_{1} \tilde{W}_{2}\right) \mathbf{V}-\tilde{W}_{2} \mathbf{V}^{2}-p \mathbf{I}, \tag{5.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

although $p$ in (5.8) differs from that in (5.7).

### 5.3. Other constraints

Any single internal constraint on the deformation can be written in the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
C(\mathbf{F})=0 \tag{5.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

for all deformation gradients $\mathbf{F}$, where $C$ (for constraint) is a scalar function. Since a constraint (such as incompressibility) is unaffected by a superposed rigid motion, $C$ must be an objective scalar function, so that

$$
\begin{equation*}
C(\mathbf{Q F})=C(\mathbf{F}) \tag{5.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

for all rotations $\mathbf{Q}$. In particular, the choice $\mathbf{Q}=\mathbf{R}^{T}$ yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
C(\mathbf{F})=C(\mathbf{U}) . \tag{5.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that in general, however, $C(\mathbf{U})$ is not a scalar invariant of $\mathbf{U}$.
To accommodate the constraint in the stress-deformation relation we consider

$$
W(\mathbf{F})+q C(\mathbf{F}),
$$

### 5.2. Stress-deformation relations

### 5.2.1. Invariants $I_{1}, I_{2}$

For an incompressible material $I_{3} \equiv 1$. Thus, for an incompressible isotropic material the dependence of the strain energy on the invariants discussed in Section 4.1.1 now reduces to a representation in terms of the two independent invariants $I_{1}$ and $I_{2}$ alone, and we write $\bar{W}\left(I_{1}, I_{2}\right)$. It follows from (5.5), on use of (4.15), that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{\sigma}=2\left(\bar{W}_{1}+I_{1} \bar{W}_{2}\right) \mathbf{B}-2 \bar{W}_{2} \mathbf{B}^{2}-p \mathbf{I} . \tag{5.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 5.2.2. Invariants $i_{1}, i_{2}$

The counterpart of (5.7) in respect of $\tilde{W}\left(i_{1}, i_{2}\right)\left(\right.$ with $\left.i_{3} \equiv 1\right)$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{\sigma}=\left(\tilde{W}_{1}+i_{1} \tilde{W}_{2}\right) \mathbf{V}-\tilde{W}_{2} \mathbf{V}^{2}-p \mathbf{I}, \tag{5.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

although $p$ in (5.8) differs from that in (5.7).

### 5.3. Other constraints

Any single internal constraint on the deformation can be written in the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
C(\mathbf{F})=0 \tag{5.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

for all deformation gradients $\mathbf{F}$, where $C$ (for constraint) is a scalar function. Since a constraint (such as incompressibility) is unaffected by a superposed rigid motion, $C$ must be an objective scalar function, so that

$$
\begin{equation*}
C(\mathbf{Q F})=C(\mathbf{F}) \tag{5.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

for all rotations $\mathbf{Q}$. In particular, the choice $\mathbf{Q}=\mathbf{R}^{T}$ yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
C(\mathbf{F})=C(\mathbf{U}) . \tag{5.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that in general, however, $C(\mathbf{U})$ is not a scalar invariant of $\mathbf{U}$.
To accommodate the constraint in the stress-deformation relation we consider

$$
W(\mathbf{F})+q C(\mathbf{F}),
$$

### 5.4.1. Use of the invariants $I_{1}, I_{2}$

A basic strain-energy function, known as the neo-Hookean material, has the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{W}=\frac{1}{2} \mu\left(I_{1}-3\right), \tag{5.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mu(>0)$ is a material constant referred to as the shear modulus of the material in the natural configuration. This is a prototype model for rubber elasticity. The associated Cauchy and nominal stresses are given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{\sigma}=\mu \mathbf{B}-p \mathbf{I}, \quad \mathbf{S}=\mu \mathbf{F}^{T}-p \mathbf{F}^{-1} \tag{5.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

respectively.
Another such model is the Mooney-Rivlin material, defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{W}=\frac{1}{2} \mu_{1}\left(I_{1}-3\right)-\frac{1}{2} \mu_{2}\left(I_{2}-3\right), \tag{5.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mu_{1}(\geq 0)$ and $\mu_{2}(\leq 0)$ are constants such that $\mu_{1}-\mu_{2}=\mu(>0)$. The Cauchy stress can be calculated from (5.7).

### 5.4.2. Use of the invariants $i_{1}, i_{2}$

The Varga material has the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tilde{W}=2 \mu\left(i_{1}-3\right) \tag{5.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

while, analogously to (5.18), we could also consider

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tilde{W}=\mu_{1}\left(i_{1}-3\right)-\mu_{2}\left(i_{2}-3\right) \tag{5.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

where again $\mu_{1}(\geq 0)$ and $\mu_{2}(\leq 0)$ are constants (not the same as in (5.18)), this time satisfying $\mu_{1}-\mu_{2}=2 \mu(>0)$. These two strain-energy functions are useful in circumstances when the strains are of moderate magnitude. In respect of (5.20) the Cauchy stress may be obtained from (5.8).

### 5.4.3. Use of the stretches

An example of a strain-energy function for incompressible materials is that given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
W=\sum_{n=1}^{N} \frac{\mu_{n}}{\alpha_{n}}\left(\lambda_{1}^{\alpha_{n}}+\lambda_{2}^{\alpha_{n}}+\lambda_{3}^{\alpha_{n}}-3\right), \quad \lambda_{1} \lambda_{2} \lambda_{3}=1, \tag{5.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $N$ is a positive integer and $\mu_{n}$ and $\alpha_{n}$ are material constants such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mu_{n} \alpha_{n}>0, \quad n=1,2, \ldots, N, \quad \sum_{n=1}^{N} \mu_{n} \alpha_{n}=2 \mu \tag{5.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

- From (5.3) the principal Cauchy stresses are calculated as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{i}=\sum_{n=1}^{N} \mu_{n} \lambda_{i}^{\alpha_{n}}-p, \quad i \in\{1,2,3\} . \tag{5.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that since, on use of the incompressibility condition, $I_{2}$ and $i_{2}$ may be written as

$$
I_{2}=\lambda_{1}^{-2}+\lambda_{2}^{-2}+\lambda_{3}^{-2}, \quad i_{2}=\lambda_{1}^{-1}+\lambda_{2}^{-1}+\lambda_{3}^{-1}
$$

the energy function (5.21) includes (5.16) and (5.18)-(5.20) as special cases.
For more details of strain-energy functions in terms of the stretches we refer to Ogden [15, 16], for example.

### 5.5. Application to homogeneous deformations

We recall that for a homogeneous deformation the deformation gradient $\mathbf{F}$ is constant, i.e. independent of position $\mathbf{X}$.

A pure homogeneous strain is a deformation of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
x_{1}=\lambda_{1} X_{1}, \quad x_{2}=\lambda_{2} X_{2}, \quad x_{3}=\lambda_{3} X_{3}, \tag{5.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the principal stretches $\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \lambda_{3}$ are constants and ( $X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}$ ) and $\left(x_{1}, x_{2}, x_{3}\right)$ are Cartesian coordinates. For this deformation $\mathbf{F}=\mathbf{U}=\mathbf{V}$, $\mathbf{R}=\mathbf{I}$ and the principal axes of the deformation coincide with the Cartesian coordinate directions, i.e. they do not change their orientation as the values of the stretches change. For an unconstrained isotropic elastic material the associated principal Biot stresses are given by (4.8). These equations serve as a basis for determining the form of $W$ from triaxial experimental tests in which $\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \lambda_{3}$ and $t_{1}, t_{2}, t_{3}$ are measured. If biaxial tests are conducted on a thin sheet of material which lies in the ( $X_{1}, X_{2}$ )-plane with no force applied to the faces of the sheet (plane stress) then, when written in full, equations (4.8) are

$$
\begin{equation*}
t_{1}=\frac{\partial W}{\partial \lambda_{1}}\left(\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \lambda_{3}\right), \quad t_{2}=\frac{\partial W}{\partial \lambda_{2}}\left(\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \lambda_{3}\right), \quad t_{3}=\frac{\partial W}{\partial \lambda_{3}}\left(\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \lambda_{3}\right)=0 \tag{5.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the third equation gives $\lambda_{3}$ implicitly in terms of $\lambda_{1}$ and $\lambda_{2}$ when $W$ is known. In this situation the stretches $\lambda_{1}$ and $\lambda_{2}$ can be varied independently, but such a test is not sufficient to enable a complete characterization of $W$ to be achieved since $\lambda_{3}$ is not varied independently of $\lambda_{1}$ and $\lambda_{2}$. The situation is different for an incompressible material and we now focus on materials subject to the constraint

$$
\begin{equation*}
\lambda_{1} \lambda_{2} \lambda_{3}=1 \tag{5.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

In this case the biaxial test is important since, in principle, it affords the possibility of determining the stress-stretch characteristics of the material for all valid values of the stretches. The counterpart of (4.8) for the incompressible case is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
t_{i}=\frac{\partial W}{\partial \lambda_{i}}-p \lambda_{i}^{-1} \tag{5.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

or, in terms of the principal Cauchy stresses,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{i}=\lambda_{i} \frac{\partial W}{\partial \lambda_{i}}-p \tag{5.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

At this point we use (5.26) to express the strain energy as a function of two independent stretches and for this purpose we define

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{W}\left(\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}\right)=W\left(\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \lambda_{1}^{-1} \lambda_{2}^{-1}\right) \tag{5.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

This enables $p$ to be eliminated from equations (5.28) and leads to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{1}-\sigma_{3}=\lambda_{1} \frac{\partial \hat{W}}{\partial \lambda_{1}}, \quad \sigma_{2}-\sigma_{3}=\lambda_{2} \frac{\partial \hat{W}}{\partial \lambda_{2}} \tag{5.30}
\end{equation*}
$$

It is important to observe that, because of the incompressibility constraint, equation (5.30) is unaffected by the superposition of an arbitrary hydrostatic stress. Thus, without loss of generality, we may set $\sigma_{3}=0$ in (5.30). In terms of the principal Biot stresses we then have simply

$$
\begin{equation*}
t_{1}=\frac{\partial \hat{W}}{\partial \lambda_{1}}, \quad t_{2}=\frac{\partial \hat{W}}{\partial \lambda_{2}} . \tag{5.31}
\end{equation*}
$$

These equations are important since they provide two equations relating the two independent stretches $\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}$ to the stresses $t_{1}, t_{2}$ and therefore a basis for characterizing $\hat{W}$ from measured biaxial data.

We note here that in the undeformed stress-free (natural) configuration $\hat{W}\left(\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}\right)$ should satisfy the conditions

$$
\begin{align*}
& \hat{W}(1,1)=0, \quad \hat{W}_{1}=\hat{W}_{2}=0,  \tag{5.32}\\
& \hat{W}_{12}=2 \mu, \quad \hat{W}_{11}=\hat{W}_{22}=4 \mu, \tag{5.33}
\end{align*}
$$

where the subscripts denote differentiation with respect to $\lambda_{1}$ and $\lambda_{2}$ and $\mu$ again is the shear modulus.

### 5.6. Comparison of theory and experiment for rubber

In order to relate the theory to experimental data on rubber it is convenient to write the strain energy (5.21) in the Valanis-Landel separable form

$$
\begin{equation*}
W=w\left(\lambda_{1}\right)+w\left(\lambda_{2}\right)+w\left(\lambda_{3}\right), \tag{5.34}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
w\left(\lambda_{i}\right)=\sum_{n=1}^{N}\left(\lambda_{i}^{\alpha_{n}}-1\right) / \alpha_{n} . \tag{5.35}
\end{equation*}
$$

- From (5.30) the stress difference $\sigma_{1}-\sigma_{2}$ is then written

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{1}-\sigma_{2}=\lambda_{1} w^{\prime}\left(\lambda_{1}\right)-\lambda_{2} w^{\prime}\left(\lambda_{2}\right) . \tag{5.36}
\end{equation*}
$$

It turns out that this is a very useful representation since, for fixed $\lambda_{2}$, the shape of the curve of $\sigma_{1}-\sigma_{2}$ plotted against $\lambda_{1}$ for certain rubbers is essentially independent of the value of $\lambda_{2}$. This means that the shape of the curve is determined by taking $\lambda_{2}=1$, in which case (5.36) reduces to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{1}-\sigma_{2}=\lambda_{1} w^{\prime}\left(\lambda_{1}\right)-w^{\prime}(1) . \tag{5.37}
\end{equation*}
$$

For $\lambda_{2} \neq 1$ the corresponding curve is obtained by a vertical shift defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
w^{\prime}(1)-\lambda_{2} w^{\prime}\left(\lambda_{2}\right), \tag{5.38}
\end{equation*}
$$

which, when added to (5.37), reproduces (5.36). Typical data for a vulcanized natural rubber, taken from biaxial experiments of Jones and Treloar [12], are shown in Fig. 5.1(a)-(d) with $\sigma_{1}-\sigma_{2}$ plotted against $\lambda_{1}$ for four different values of $\lambda_{2}:$ (a) 1 , (b) 1.502 , (c) 1.984 , (d) 2.295 . The experimental re-


Figure 5.1. Plot of $\sigma_{1}-\sigma_{2}$ (vertical axes) against $\lambda_{1}$ for (a) $\lambda_{2}=1$, (b) $\lambda_{2}=$ 1.502, (c) $\lambda_{2}=1.984$, (d) $\lambda_{2}=2.295$. The data (circles) are compared with the theoretical curves corresponding to the Mooney-Rivlin material (continuous curves) and the neo-Hookean material (dashed curves).
sults (circles) are compared with the predictions of the neo-Hookean material (dashed curves), with $\mu=0.4807 \mathrm{Nmm}^{-2}$ and the Mooney-Rivlin material (continuous curves), with $\mu_{1}=0.4206, \mu_{2}=0.0601 \mathrm{Nmm}^{-2}$.


Figure 5.2. Plot of $\sigma_{1}-\sigma_{2}$ against $\lambda_{1}$ with the data in Figures 1(a)-(d) superimposed and, additionally, data for $\lambda_{2}=2.623$. The continuous curves are based on the strain-energy function (5.21) with constants given by (5.39).

Figure 5.2 shows the data from Fig. 5.1 for the four values of $\lambda_{2}$ superimposed, together with corresponding data for $\lambda_{2}=2.623$. This plot shows clearly that the shape of the curves is independent of $\lambda_{2}$. The data have been fitted with a strain-energy function of the form (5.21) with $N=3$ and the following values of the material constants:

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\alpha_{1}=1.3, & \alpha_{2}=4.0, \alpha_{3}=-2.0 \\
\mu_{1}=0.69, & \mu_{2}=0.01, \mu_{3}=-0.0122 \mathrm{Nmm}^{-2} . \tag{5.39}
\end{array}
$$

The theoretical curves are shown as continuous curves in Fig. 5.2.
There are several special cases of the biaxial test which are of interest, but we just give the details for simple tension, for which we set $t_{2}=0$. This has the advantage that relatively large values of the stretches can be achieved. By symmetry, the incompressibility constraint yields $\lambda_{2}=\lambda_{3}=\lambda_{1}^{-1 / 2}$. The strain energy may now be treated as a function of just $\lambda=\lambda_{1}$, and we write

$$
\begin{equation*}
W_{\mathrm{st}}(\lambda)=\hat{W}\left(\lambda, \lambda^{-1 / 2}\right) \tag{5.40}
\end{equation*}
$$

and (5.31) reduces to

$$
\begin{equation*}
t \equiv t_{1}=W_{\mathrm{st}}^{\prime}(\lambda) \tag{5.41}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the prime indicates differentiation with respect to $\lambda$ and the subscript st signifies simple tension.


Figure 5.3. Simple tension data with the nominal stress $t$ (dimensionless) plotted on the vertical axis against the stretch $\lambda$ for a vulcanized natural rubber (circles) compared with the predictions of the neo-Hookean material (dashed curve) and a strain-energy function of the form (5.21) with $N=3$ (continuous curve).

Representative simple tension data are shown in Fig. 5.3 for a vulcanized natural rubber [24]. The data are compared with the theory based on the neo-Hookean material (dashed curves) and a three-term energy function of the form (5.21) (continuous curve).

### 5.6.1. Simple shear

Experimental tests such as biaxial deformation and simple tension are such that the principal axes of strain do not change as the magnitude of the strain is varied. We now consider the predictions of the theory for a deformation for which the orientation of the principal axes of strain does change. This is the simple shear deformation discussed in Section 1.7.2. We recall from Section 1.7.2 that in a simple shear deformation the Eulerian principal axes $\mathbf{v}^{(1)}$ and $\mathbf{v}^{(2)}$ are given by

$$
\mathbf{v}^{(1)}=\cos \phi \mathbf{e}_{1}+\sin \phi \mathbf{e}_{2}, \quad \mathbf{v}^{(2)}=-\sin \phi \mathbf{e}_{1}+\cos \phi \mathbf{e}_{2}
$$

where

$$
\tan 2 \phi=\frac{2}{\gamma}, \quad \gamma=\lambda-\lambda^{-1}
$$

and the stretches $\lambda, \lambda^{-1}$ correspond to $\mathbf{v}^{(1)}, \mathbf{v}^{(2)}$ respectively. Note that it also follows that $\tan \phi=\lambda^{-1}$.

Since the material is isotropic we must have

$$
\boldsymbol{\sigma}=\sigma_{1} \mathbf{v}^{(1)} \otimes \mathbf{v}^{(1)}+\sigma_{2} \mathbf{v}^{(2)} \otimes \mathbf{v}^{(2)}+\sigma_{3} \mathbf{v}^{(3)} \otimes \mathbf{v}^{(3)}
$$

with $\mathbf{v}^{(3)}=\mathbf{e}_{3}$, so that the Cartesian components of $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$ are

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\sigma_{11}=\sigma_{1} \cos ^{2} \phi+\sigma_{2} \sin ^{2} \phi, & \sigma_{12}=\left(\sigma_{1}-\sigma_{2}\right) \sin \phi \cos \phi, \\
\sigma_{22}=\sigma_{1} \sin ^{2} \phi+\sigma_{2} \cos ^{2} \phi, & \sigma_{33}=\sigma_{3}, \\
\sigma_{13}=\sigma_{23}=0 .
\end{array}
$$

By substituting for the various expressions involving $\phi$ in favour of $\lambda$ we obtain the normal stresses in the form

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \sigma_{11}=\frac{1}{2}\left(\sigma_{1}+\sigma_{2}\right)+\frac{1}{2}\left(\sigma_{1}-\sigma_{2}\right) \frac{\lambda-\lambda^{-1}}{\lambda+\lambda^{-1}}, \\
& \sigma_{22}=\frac{1}{2}\left(\sigma_{1}+\sigma_{2}\right)-\frac{1}{2}\left(\sigma_{1}-\sigma_{2}\right) \frac{\lambda-\lambda^{-1}}{\lambda+\lambda^{-1}},
\end{aligned}
$$

and the shear stress as

$$
\sigma_{12}=\frac{\sigma_{1}-\sigma_{2}}{\lambda+\lambda^{-1}} .
$$

The connection

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{11}-\sigma_{22}=\left(\lambda-\lambda^{-1}\right) \sigma_{12} \equiv \gamma \sigma_{12} \tag{5.42}
\end{equation*}
$$

then follows. This is important to note since it is an example of a universal relation, i.e. a connection between the stress components that is independent of the form of constitutive law (in this case, the class of incompressible isotropic elastic solids). For a recent discussion of universal relations we refer to the article by Saccomandi in [4].

Instead of regarding $W$ as a function of $I_{1}$ and $I_{2}$ or of the stretches we may (for this specific deformation) take it to be a function of $\gamma$ and define

$$
\begin{equation*}
W_{\mathrm{ss}}(\gamma)=\hat{W}\left(\lambda, \lambda^{-1}\right) \tag{5.43}
\end{equation*}
$$

the subscript ss signifying simple shear. Then, we have simply

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{12}=W_{\mathrm{ss}}^{\prime}(\gamma) \tag{5.44}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that for the neo-Hookean form of strain-energy function this gives $\sigma_{12}=$ $\mu \gamma$, i.e. the shear stress is linear in the amount of shear $\gamma$. Note also that in general normal stresses are required in addition to shear stresses in order to maintain the shape of the material. The necessity for normal forces is an example of the Kelvin effect.

For the considered simple shear deformation we record here for later reference that the invariants $I_{1}, I_{2}, I_{3}$ are given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
I_{1}=I_{2}=3+\gamma^{2}, \quad I_{3}=1 \tag{5.45}
\end{equation*}
$$

emphasizing that simple shear is an isochoric deformation. Simple shear is an important deformation since it arises locally in many problems of practical and theoretical interest, such as the problem of azimuthal shear to be considered in Chapter 10.

## Chapter 6

## Boundary-value problems

We now consider the formulation of (equilibrium) boundary-value problems. Specifically, we consider the equilibrium equation in the absence of body forces. The appropriate specialization of the equation of motion (3.2) is then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{div} \boldsymbol{\sigma}=\mathbf{0}, \tag{6.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

or, in terms of nominal stress,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Div} \mathbf{S}=\mathbf{0} . \tag{6.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Equations (6.1) and (6.2) have to be taken in conjunction with the stressdeformation relations

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{\sigma}=J^{-1} \mathbf{F} \frac{\partial W}{\partial \mathbf{F}}, \quad \mathbf{S}=\frac{\partial W}{\partial \mathbf{F}}, \tag{6.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

respectively, in the case of an unconstrained material, with the deformation gradient $\mathbf{F}$ given by $\mathbf{F}=\operatorname{Grad} \mathbf{x}$ with $\mathbf{x}=\boldsymbol{\chi}(\mathbf{X})$. For an incompressible material the stress-deformation relations (6.3) are replaced by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{\sigma}=\mathbf{F} \frac{\partial W}{\partial \mathbf{F}}-p \mathbf{I}, \quad \mathbf{S}=\frac{\partial W}{\partial \mathbf{F}}-p \mathbf{F}^{-1}, \quad \operatorname{det} \mathbf{F} \equiv 1 . \tag{6.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Appropriate boundary conditions are required in order to formulate a boundary-value problem. Typical boundary conditions arising in problems of nonlinear elasticity are those in which $\mathbf{x}$ is specified on part of the boundary,
$\partial \mathrm{B}_{r}^{x} \subset \partial \mathrm{~B}_{r}$ say, and the stress vector on the remainder, $\partial \mathrm{B}_{r}^{\tau}$, so that $\partial \mathrm{B}_{r}^{x} \cup$ $\partial \mathrm{B}_{r}^{\tau}=\partial \mathrm{B}_{r}$ and $\partial \mathrm{B}_{r}^{x} \cap \partial \mathrm{~B}_{r}^{\tau}=\emptyset$. We write

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathbf{x}=\boldsymbol{\xi}(\mathbf{X}) & \text { on } \partial \mathrm{B}_{r}^{x},  \tag{6.5}\\
\mathbf{S}^{T} \mathbf{N}=\boldsymbol{\tau}(\mathbf{F}, \mathbf{X}) & \text { on } \partial \mathrm{B}_{r}^{\tau}, \tag{6.6}
\end{align*}
$$

where $\boldsymbol{\xi}$ and $\boldsymbol{\tau}$ are specified functions. In general, $\boldsymbol{\tau}$ may depend on the deformation and this is indicated in (6.6) by showing the dependence of $\boldsymbol{\tau}$ on the deformation gradient $\mathbf{F}$. (Note that $\boldsymbol{\tau}$ differs from the stress vector $\boldsymbol{\tau}$ defined in Section 2.5.) If the surface traction defined by (6.6) is independent of $\mathbf{F}$ it is referred to as a dead-load traction. In the particular case in which the boundary traction in (6.6) is associated with a hydrostatic pressure, $P$ say, so that $\boldsymbol{\sigma} \mathbf{n}=-P \mathbf{n}$, then $\boldsymbol{\tau}$ depends on the deformation in the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{\tau}=-J P \mathbf{F}^{-T} \mathbf{N} \quad \text { on } \partial \mathrm{B}_{r}^{\tau} . \tag{6.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

When coupled with suitable boundary conditions, either of the equations (6.1) or (6.2) in conjunction with (6.3) or (6.4), as appropriate, forms a coupled system of three highly nonlinear second-order partial differential equations for the components of $\mathbf{x}=\boldsymbol{\chi}(\mathbf{X})$.

For homogeneous deformations, of course, the equilibrium equations are satisfied automatically and such deformations can be maintained by the application of suitable boundary tractions. For non-homogeneous deformations, it is necessary to solve the equilibrium equations. In the case of unconstrained materials very few explicit solutions have been obtained for boundary-value problems involving non-homogeneous deformations, and these arise for very special choices of the form of $W$ and for relatively simple geometries. For incompressible materials, on the other hand, many more explicit solutions are available. In the following section we describe a simple example of a boundary-value problem for an incompressible isotropic elastic material in which the deformation is non-homogeneous. A different nonhomogeneous deformation, namely azimuthal shear, is discussed in Chapter 10.

### 6.1. Extension and inflation of a thick-walled tube

We consider a thick-walled circular cylindrical tube whose initial geometry is defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
A \leq R \leq B, \quad 0 \leq \Theta \leq 2 \pi, \quad 0 \leq Z \leq L, \tag{6.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $A, B, L$ are positive constants and $R, \Theta, Z$ are cylindrical polar coordinates associated with basis vectors $\left(\mathbf{E}_{R}, \mathbf{E}_{\ominus}, \mathbf{E}_{Z}\right)$. The deformed configuration is specified in terms of cylindrical polar coordinates $(r, \theta, z)$, with basis vectors ( $\mathbf{e}_{r}, \mathbf{e}_{\theta}, \mathbf{e}_{z}$ ) and the position vector in the deformed configuration may be written

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{x}=r \mathbf{e}_{r}+z \mathbf{e}_{z} . \tag{6.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

The tube is deformed so that the circular cylindrical shape is maintained. Since the material is incompressible the deformation is described by the equations

$$
\begin{equation*}
r=f(R) \equiv\left[a^{2}+\lambda_{z}^{-1}\left(R^{2}-A^{2}\right)\right]^{1 / 2}, \quad \theta=\Theta, \quad z=\lambda_{z} Z \tag{6.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\lambda_{z}$ is the (uniform) axial stretch and $a$ is the internal radius of the deformed tube.

Since, for this deformation, $\mathbf{e}_{r}=\mathbf{E}_{R}, \mathbf{e}_{\theta}=\mathbf{E}_{\Theta}, \mathbf{e}_{z}=\mathbf{E}_{Z}$, the deformation gradient is then calculated as

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathbf{F} & =\operatorname{Grad} \mathbf{x}=\frac{\partial \mathbf{x}}{\partial R} \otimes \mathbf{e}_{r}+\frac{1}{R} \frac{\partial \mathbf{x}}{\partial \Theta} \otimes \mathbf{e}_{\theta}+\frac{\partial \mathbf{x}}{\partial Z} \otimes \mathbf{e}_{z} \\
& =f^{\prime}(R) \mathbf{e}_{r} \otimes \mathbf{e}_{r}+\frac{r}{R} \mathbf{e}_{\theta} \otimes \mathbf{e}_{\theta}+\lambda_{z} \mathbf{e}_{z} \otimes \mathbf{e}_{z} \\
& =\lambda_{1} \mathbf{e}_{r} \otimes \mathbf{e}_{r}+\lambda_{2} \mathbf{e}_{\theta} \otimes \mathbf{e}_{\theta}+\lambda_{3} \mathbf{e}_{z} \otimes \mathbf{e}_{z} . \tag{6.11}
\end{align*}
$$

Thus, $\mathbf{F}$ is symmetric and in spectral form with respect to the cylindrical polar axes. The principal stretches $\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \lambda_{3}$, which are associated respectively with the radial, azimuthal and axial directions, are therefore identified. Thus,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\lambda_{1}=\lambda^{-1} \lambda_{z}^{-1}, \quad \lambda_{2}=\frac{r}{R}=\lambda, \quad \lambda_{3}=\lambda_{z}, \tag{6.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the notation $\lambda$ has been introduced. It follows from (6.10) and (6.12) that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\lambda_{a}^{2} \lambda_{z}-1=\frac{R^{2}}{A^{2}}\left(\lambda^{2} \lambda_{z}-1\right)=\frac{B^{2}}{A^{2}}\left(\lambda_{b}^{2} \lambda_{z}-1\right), \tag{6.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
\lambda_{a}=a / A, \quad \lambda_{b}=b / B, \quad b=f(B) . \tag{6.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

For a fixed value of $\lambda_{z}$ the inequalities

$$
\begin{equation*}
\lambda_{a}^{2} \lambda_{z} \geq 1, \quad \lambda_{a} \geq \lambda \geq \lambda_{b} \tag{6.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

hold during inflation of the tube, with equality holding if and only if $\lambda=$ $\lambda_{z}^{-1 / 2}$ for $A \leq R \leq B$. Note that when this latter equality holds the deformation corresponds to simple tension.

We use the notation (5.29) for the strain energy but with $\lambda_{2}=\lambda$ and $\lambda_{3}=\lambda_{z}$ as the independent stretches (instead of $\lambda_{1}$ and $\lambda_{2}$ ), so that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{W}\left(\lambda, \lambda_{z}\right)=W\left(\lambda^{-1} \lambda_{z}^{-1}, \lambda, \lambda_{z}\right) . \tag{6.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

Hence

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{2}-\sigma_{1}=\lambda \hat{W}_{\lambda}, \quad \sigma_{3}-\sigma_{1}=\lambda_{z} \hat{W}_{\lambda_{z}}, \tag{6.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the subscripts indicate partial derivatives, and, because the material is isotropic,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{\sigma}=\sigma_{1} \mathbf{e}_{r} \otimes \mathbf{e}_{r}+\sigma_{2} \mathbf{e}_{\theta} \otimes \mathbf{e}_{\theta}+\sigma_{3} \mathbf{e}_{z} \otimes \mathbf{e}_{z} . \tag{6.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since the deformation depends only on the radial coordinate, it follows from (6.18) that

$$
\operatorname{div} \boldsymbol{\sigma} \equiv\left[\frac{\partial \sigma_{1}}{\partial r}+\frac{1}{r}\left(\sigma_{1}-\sigma_{2}\right)\right] \mathbf{e}_{r},
$$

and the equilibrium equation (6.1) therefore reduces to the radial equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\mathrm{d} \sigma_{1}}{\mathrm{~d} r}+\frac{1}{r}\left(\sigma_{1}-\sigma_{2}\right)=0 \tag{6.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

in terms of the principal Cauchy stresses. Associated with this equation we have the (radial) boundary conditions

$$
\sigma_{1}= \begin{cases}-P & \text { on } r=a  \tag{6.20}\\ 0 & \text { on } r=b\end{cases}
$$

corresponding to pressure $P(\geq 0)$ on the inside of the tube and zero traction on the outside.

By making use of (6.10) and (6.12)-(6.14) we obtain (after some rearrangement)

$$
r \frac{d \lambda}{d r}=-\lambda\left(\lambda^{2} \lambda_{z}-1\right),
$$

and it is convenient to use this to change the independent variable from $r$ to $\lambda$. Then, integration of (6.19) and application of the boundary conditions (6.20) leads to

$$
\begin{equation*}
P=\int_{\lambda_{b}}^{\lambda_{a}}\left(\lambda^{2} \lambda_{z}-1\right)^{-1} \frac{\partial \hat{W}}{\partial \lambda} d \lambda . \tag{6.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

- From (6.13) we recall that $\lambda_{b}$ depends on $\lambda_{a}$. Equation (6.21) therefore provides an expression for $P$ as a function of $\lambda_{a}$ (equivalently of the deformed radius) when $\lambda_{z}$ is fixed.

In order to hold $\lambda_{z}$ fixed an axial load, $N$ say, must be applied to the ends of the tube. This is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
N=2 \pi \int_{a}^{b} \sigma_{3} r d r \tag{6.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

After some rearrangements and use of (6.17) and (6.19) equation (6.22) can be expressed in the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
N / \pi A^{2}=\left(\lambda_{a}^{2} \lambda_{z}-1\right) \int_{\lambda_{b}}^{\lambda_{a}}\left(\lambda^{2} \lambda_{z}-1\right)^{-2}\left(2 \lambda_{z} \frac{\partial \hat{W}}{\partial \lambda_{z}}-\lambda \frac{\partial \hat{W}}{\partial \lambda}\right) \lambda \mathrm{d} \lambda+P \lambda_{a}^{2} \tag{6.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

We note that $\pi A^{2}$ times the integral in (6.23), i.e. $N-P \pi a^{2}$, is referred to as the reduced axial load since it accounts for the effect of the pressure on the ends of the cylinder, it being assumed that the cylinder has closed ends. For a more detailed discussion of this problem, including an analysis of bifurcation into non-circular cylindrical modes of deformation, we refer to Haughton and Ogden [5, 6].

Representative results for the pressure $P$ calculated from (6.21) are shown in Fig. 6.1 in dimensionless form. This demonstrates the very different behaviour of biological soft tissues and rubberlike materials.


Figure 6.1. Plot of the dimensionless pressure $P^{*}$ against the stretch $\lambda_{a}$ for different wall thicknesses and an axial pre-stretch $\lambda_{z}=1.2$ in respect of (a) a typical soft tissue, and (b) a typical rubberlike material.

In the special case in which the wall thickness of the tube is small compared with the radius the integral (6.21) may be approximated in the fol-
lowing way (this corresponds to the membrane approximation). Let $\epsilon \equiv$ $(B-A) / A$ be a dimensionless measure of the wall thickness in the reference configuration. Then, from (6.13), we may obtain the approximation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\lambda_{a} \approx \lambda_{b}+\epsilon \lambda^{-1} \lambda_{z}^{-1}\left(\lambda^{2} \lambda_{z}-1\right), \tag{6.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

where, to the first order in $\epsilon, \lambda$ may be taken as either $\lambda_{a}$ or $\lambda_{b}$. On use of (6.24) we may then approximate $P$ as

$$
\begin{equation*}
P \approx \epsilon \lambda_{z}^{-1} \lambda^{-1} \hat{W}_{\lambda}\left(\lambda, \lambda_{z}\right), \tag{6.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

so that, at fixed $\lambda_{z}$, the behaviour of $P$ as a function of $\lambda$ is that of $\lambda^{-1} \hat{W}_{\lambda}$.

## Chapter 7

## Anisotropic elastic materials

The elastic response of some rubberlike materials is in essence isotropic. This is also true to a limited extent for some biological soft tissues. However, when subjected to tensile stresses of sufficient magnitude soft tissues exhibit anisotropy in their mechanical response. This is associated with distributions of collagen fibres that endow the material locally with preferred directions. In ligaments and tendons, for example, the material can be regarded as having a single preferred direction (on average). The material can then be treated as transversely isotropic. Other soft tissues have two distinct distributions of collagen fibre directions and these can be associated with two preferred directions. This is the situation for the layers of an artery wall, for example. Also, in many industrial applications of rubber the material is rendered anisotropic by the inclusion of layers of steel wires (in high pressure hoses and car tyres, for example) and/or fabric (also in car tyres). The elastic response of such composite materials can be regarded as that of a homogeneous material with anisotropic properties associated with the preferred directions generated by the fibres.

In this chapter we illustrate the structure of the strain-energy function of an anisotropic elastic solid for two important examples: (i) transverse isotropy (characterized by a single family of fibres), and (ii) the anisotropy associated with two families of fibres, and, in particular, orthotropy. The work in this chapter owes much to the theory of invariants developed by Spencer (see, for example, [21, 22]).

### 7.1. Transverse isotropy

Let the unit vector $\mathbf{M}$ be a preferred direction in the reference configuration $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ of the material. Without the preferred direction the material would be isotropic relative to $\mathrm{B}_{r}$. In general $\mathbf{M}$ varies with position $\mathbf{X}$ and is a unitvector field which, when the strain-energy function is endowed with suitable properties, can be regarded as modelling the fibres as a continuous distribution. The material response is therefore indifferent to arbitrary rotations about the direction M. Also, no physical distinction can be made between the directions $\mathbf{M}$ and $-\mathbf{M}$. Thus, the response must also be unaffected by interchange of $\mathbf{M}$ and $-\mathbf{M}$.

The strain energy $W(\mathbf{F})$ must therefore satisfy $W(\mathbf{F Q})=W(\mathbf{F})$ for all proper orthogonal $\mathbf{Q}$ such that $\mathbf{Q M}= \pm \mathbf{M}$. Note that the direction of $\mathbf{M}$ is reversed by a rotation of $\pi$ about any axis perpendicular to M. Equivalently, such a material can be characterized by a strain energy that is an isotropic function of $\mathbf{F}$ and the tensor $\mathbf{M} \otimes \mathbf{M}$ jointly. Since, by objectivity, $W$ depends on $\mathbf{F}$ only through the right stretch tensor $\mathbf{U}$ (or, equivalently, $\mathbf{C}=\mathbf{U}^{2}$ ), this means that, on writing the dependence as $W(\mathbf{C}, \mathbf{M} \otimes \mathbf{M})$, we must have

$$
\begin{equation*}
W\left(\mathbf{Q C Q}{ }^{T}, \mathbf{Q M} \otimes \mathbf{Q M}\right)=W(\mathbf{C}, \mathbf{M} \otimes \mathbf{M}) \quad \text { for all proper orthogonal } \mathbf{Q} \tag{7.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

For an unconstrained material, the requirement (7.1) implies that $W$ depends on five invariants, namely the principal invariants $I_{1}, I_{2}, I_{3}$ of $\mathbf{C}$, defined by (4.12)-(4.14) with $\mathbf{B}$ replaced by $\mathbf{C}$, together with two invariants, denoted $I_{4}$ and $I_{5}$, that depend on M and are defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
I_{4}=\mathbf{M} \cdot(\mathbf{C M}), \quad I_{5}=\mathbf{M} \cdot\left(\mathbf{C}^{2} \mathbf{M}\right) \tag{7.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that $I_{4}$ has a direct kinematical interpretation since, in accordance with (1.37), $\sqrt{I_{4}}$ represents the stretch in the direction $\mathbf{M}$. In general, however, there is no immediate simple interpretation for $I_{5}$. We use the notation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{W}\left(I_{1}, I_{2}, I_{3}, I_{4}, I_{5}\right) \tag{7.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

to represent the strain energy when treated as a function of the invariants based on $\mathbf{C}$, extending the notation used in the isotropic case to include $I_{4}$ and $I_{5}$.

In order to calculate the stresses we require the derivatives

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\partial I_{4}}{\partial \mathbf{F}}=2 \mathbf{M} \otimes \mathbf{F M}, \quad \frac{\partial I_{5}}{\partial \mathbf{F}}=2(\mathbf{M} \otimes \mathbf{F C M}+\mathbf{C M} \otimes \mathbf{F M}), \tag{7.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

together with the derivatives of $I_{1}, I_{2}, I_{3}$ given by (4.15). The resulting nominal stress tensor is given by

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathbf{S}= & 2 \bar{W}_{1} \mathbf{F}^{T}+2 \bar{W}_{2}\left(I_{1} \mathbf{I}-\mathbf{C}\right) \mathbf{F}^{T}+2 I_{3} \bar{W}_{3} \mathbf{F}^{-1}+2 \bar{W}_{4} \mathbf{M} \otimes \mathbf{F M} \\
& +2 \bar{W}_{5}(\mathbf{M} \otimes \mathbf{F C M}+\mathbf{C M} \otimes \mathbf{F M}), \tag{7.5}
\end{align*}
$$

where $\bar{W}_{i}=\partial \bar{W} / \partial I_{i}, i=1, \ldots, 5$. The result for an isotropic material is recovered by omitting the terms in $\bar{W}_{4}$ and $\bar{W}_{5}$. Equation (7.5) gives the stress in a fibre-reinforced material for which the fibre direction corresponds to $\mathbf{M}$ locally in the reference configuration. The Cauchy stress can be calculated from (7.5) using the general formula $J \boldsymbol{\sigma}=\mathbf{F S}$.

Henceforth, we restrict attention to incompressible materials, so that $I_{3} \equiv$ 1. The notation (7.3) is retained but with $I_{3}$ omitted. Equation (7.5) is then replaced by

$$
\begin{align*}
\mathbf{S}= & 2 \bar{W}_{1} \mathbf{F}^{T}+2 \bar{W}_{2}\left(I_{1} \mathbf{I}-\mathbf{C}\right) \mathbf{F}^{T}-p \mathbf{F}^{-1}+2 \bar{W}_{4} \mathbf{M} \otimes \mathbf{F M} \\
& +2 \bar{W}_{5}(\mathbf{M} \otimes \mathbf{F C M}+\mathbf{C M} \otimes \mathbf{F M}) \tag{7.6}
\end{align*}
$$

and Cauchy stress tensor is given by

$$
\begin{align*}
\boldsymbol{\sigma}= & \mathbf{F S}=-p \mathbf{I}+2 \bar{W}_{1} \mathbf{B}+2 \bar{W}_{2}\left(I_{1} \mathbf{B}-\mathbf{B}^{2}\right)+2 \bar{W}_{4} \mathbf{F M} \otimes \mathbf{F M} \\
& +2 \bar{W}_{5}(\mathbf{F} \mathbf{M} \otimes \mathbf{B F M}+\mathbf{B F M} \otimes \mathbf{F M}) \tag{7.7}
\end{align*}
$$

where $\mathbf{B}$ is the left Cauchy-Green deformation tensor and we have used the connection $\mathbf{F C M}=\mathbf{B F M}$. The symmetry of $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$ is apparent from (7.7). Note that (7.7) reduces to the corresponding result (5.7) for an isotropic material when the dependence on $I_{4}$ and $I_{5}$ is omitted.

### 7.1.1. Application to pure homogeneous deformation

In Section 5.5 we examined the pure homogeneous strain defined by (5.24) in the case of an isotropic material. Here we obtain, for comparison, the corresponding results derived from (7.7). Let $\mathbf{M}$ lie in the ( $X_{1}, X_{2}$ )-plane and suppose it has components $(\cos \varphi, \sin \varphi, 0)$. Then, we calculate

$$
\begin{equation*}
I_{4}=\lambda_{1}^{2} \cos ^{2} \varphi+\lambda_{2}^{2} \sin ^{2} \varphi, \quad I_{5}=\lambda_{1}^{4} \cos ^{2} \varphi+\lambda_{2}^{4} \sin ^{2} \varphi \tag{7.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

while, in terms of the (independent) stretches $\lambda_{1}$ and $\lambda_{2}$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
I_{1}=\lambda_{1}^{2}+\lambda_{2}^{2}+\lambda_{1}^{-2} \lambda_{2}^{-2}, \quad I_{2}=\lambda_{1}^{2} \lambda_{2}^{2}+\lambda_{1}^{-2}+\lambda_{2}^{-2} \tag{7.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

- From (7.7) the components of $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$ are calculated as

$$
\begin{gather*}
\sigma_{11}=-p+2 \bar{W}_{1} \lambda_{1}^{2}+2 \bar{W}_{2} \lambda_{1}^{2}\left(\lambda_{2}^{2}+\lambda_{3}^{2}\right) \\
+2 \bar{W}_{4} \lambda_{1}^{2} \cos ^{2} \varphi+4 \bar{W}_{5} \lambda_{1}^{4} \cos ^{2} \varphi,  \tag{7.10}\\
\sigma_{22}=-p+2 \bar{W}_{1} \lambda_{2}^{2}+2 \bar{W}_{2} \lambda_{2}^{2}\left(\lambda_{1}^{2}+\lambda_{3}^{2}\right) \\
 \tag{7.11}\\
+2 \bar{W}_{4} \lambda_{2}^{2} \sin ^{2} \varphi+4 \bar{W}_{5} \lambda_{2}^{4} \sin ^{2} \varphi,  \tag{7.12}\\
\sigma_{12}=2\left[\bar{W}_{4}+\bar{W}_{5}\left(\lambda_{1}^{2}+\lambda_{2}^{2}\right)\right] \lambda_{1} \lambda_{2} \sin \varphi \cos \varphi,  \tag{7.13}\\
\sigma_{33}=-p+2 \bar{W}_{1} \lambda_{3}^{2}+2 \bar{W}_{2} \lambda_{3}^{2}\left(\lambda_{1}^{2}+\lambda_{2}^{2}\right), \quad \sigma_{13}=\sigma_{23}=0 .
\end{gather*}
$$

Note that $\sigma_{12}$ does not in general vanish, unlike the situation for an isotropic material. This means that (as a result of lack of symmetry) shear stress is required to maintain the pure homogeneous strain in this case, and it vanishes only if the preferred direction is along one of the coordinate axes. This illustrates the fact that the principal axes of $\sigma$ do not in general coincide with the Eulerian principal axes (which, here, are the coordinate axes).

- From (7.10), (7.11) and (7.13) we obtain

$$
\begin{align*}
\sigma_{11}-\sigma_{33}= & 2 \lambda_{1}^{-2} \lambda_{2}^{-2}\left(\lambda_{1}^{4} \lambda_{2}^{2}-1\right)\left(\check{W}_{1}+\lambda_{2}^{2} \bar{W}_{2}\right) \\
& +2 \bar{W}_{4} \lambda_{1}^{2} \cos ^{2} \varphi+4 \bar{W}_{5} \lambda_{1}^{4} \cos ^{2} \varphi,  \tag{7.14}\\
\sigma_{22}-\sigma_{33}= & 2 \lambda_{1}^{-2} \lambda_{2}^{-2}\left(\lambda_{1}^{2} \lambda_{2}^{4}-1\right)\left(\bar{W}_{1}+\lambda_{1}^{2} \bar{W}_{2}\right) \\
& +2 \bar{W}_{4} \lambda_{2}^{2} \sin ^{2} \varphi+4 \bar{W}_{5} \lambda_{2}^{4} \sin ^{2} \varphi . \tag{7.15}
\end{align*}
$$

Equations (7.8) and (7.9) show that $I_{1}, I_{2}, I_{4}, I_{5}$, and hence the strain energy, depend only on $\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}$ and the angle $\varphi$. We express this dependence by extending the notation $\hat{W}$ defined in (5.29) to the present situation. Thus, we define

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{W}\left(\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \varphi\right)=\bar{W}\left(I_{1}, I_{2}, I_{4}, I_{5}\right) . \tag{7.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

It is important to note, however, that, in general, in contrast to the isotropic situation, $\hat{W}\left(\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \varphi\right)$ is not symmetric in $\lambda_{1}$ and $\lambda_{2}$. It is then easy to show that (7.14) and (7.15) may be written in the simple forms

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{11}-\sigma_{33}=\lambda_{1} \frac{\partial \hat{W}}{\partial \lambda_{1}}, \quad \sigma_{22}-\sigma_{33}=\lambda_{2} \frac{\partial \hat{W}}{\partial \lambda_{2}} . \tag{7.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

Equations (7.17) are identical in form to the corresponding equations (5.30) in the isotropic case, except that here $\sigma_{11}$ and $\sigma_{22}$ are not principal stresses since
the shear stress $\sigma_{12}$ does not in general vanish and, it should be emphasized, that $\hat{W}\left(\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \varphi\right)$ is not symmetric in $\lambda_{1}$ and $\lambda_{2}$.

We recall that for incompressible isotropic materials homogeneous biaxial deformations in which two independent stretches (or $I_{1}$ and $I_{2}$ ) are varied independently are sufficient to characterize the material properties (i.e. the strain-energy function). This is clearly not the case for an incompressible transversely isotropic material, for which there are four independent invariants. Characterization of the properties of a transversely isotropic material requires experiments in which (in principle) these invariants are varied independently.

We note here that for the considered pure homogeneous strain the components of $\mathbf{F M}$ are ( $\lambda_{1} \cos \phi, \lambda_{2} \sin \phi, 0$ ). Let $\mathbf{m}$ denote the unit vector in the direction FM and suppose m has components $\left(\cos \varphi^{*}, \sin \varphi^{*}, 0\right)$. Then, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tan \varphi^{*}=\lambda_{2} \lambda_{1}^{-1} \tan \varphi \tag{7.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 7.1.2. Plane strain

It is interesting to examine the simplifications that arise in the case of a plane deformation. We consider a plane deformation in which $\lambda_{3}=1$. It then follows that $\lambda_{1} \lambda_{2}=1$ and from (7.8) and (7.9) that

$$
\begin{equation*}
I_{2}=I_{1}, \quad I_{5}=\left(I_{1}-1\right) I_{4}-1 \tag{7.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus, we may regard the energy as a function of just two independent invariants, such as $I_{1}$ and $I_{4}$, and we write

$$
\begin{equation*}
\overline{\bar{W}}\left(I_{1}, I_{4}\right)=\bar{W}\left(I_{1}, I_{1}, I_{4},\left(I_{1}-1\right) I_{4}-1\right) \tag{7.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

It follows that the Cauchy stress is given simply by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{\sigma}=2 \overline{\bar{W}}_{1} \mathbf{B}+2 \overline{\bar{W}}_{4} \mathbf{F M} \otimes \mathbf{F M}-p \mathbf{I}, \tag{7.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

which should be compared with (7.7).
For pure homogeneous strain, the in-plane components of $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$ are obtained from (7.21) as

$$
\begin{align*}
& \sigma_{11}=2 \overline{\bar{W}}_{1} \lambda_{1}^{2}+2 \overline{\bar{W}}_{4} \lambda_{1}^{2} \cos ^{2} \varphi-p,  \tag{7.22}\\
& \sigma_{22}=2 \overline{\bar{W}}_{1} \lambda_{2}^{2}+2 \overline{\bar{W}}_{4} \lambda_{2}^{2} \sin ^{2} \varphi-p, \tag{7.23}
\end{align*}
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{12}=2 \overline{\bar{W}}_{4} \sin \varphi \cos \varphi \tag{7.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $\lambda_{1} \lambda_{2}=1$.
For the simple shear deformation discussed in Sections 1.7.2 and 5.6.1, we obtain from (7.21)

$$
\begin{align*}
& \sigma_{11}=2 \overline{\bar{W}}_{1}\left(1+\gamma^{2}\right)+2 \overline{\bar{W}}_{4}(\cos \varphi+\gamma \sin \varphi)^{2}-p,  \tag{7.25}\\
& \sigma_{22}=2 \overline{\bar{W}}_{1}+2 \overline{\bar{W}}_{4} \sin ^{2} \varphi-p,  \tag{7.26}\\
& \sigma_{12}=2 \gamma \overline{\bar{W}}_{1}+2 \overline{\bar{W}}_{4} \sin \varphi(\cos \varphi+\gamma \sin \varphi), \tag{7.27}
\end{align*}
$$

with

$$
\begin{equation*}
I_{1}=3+\gamma^{2}, \quad I_{4}=1+\gamma \sin 2 \varphi+\gamma^{2} \sin ^{2} \varphi . \tag{7.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{11}-\sigma_{22}-\gamma \sigma_{12}=\overline{\bar{W}}_{4}(2 \cos 2 \varphi+\gamma \sin 2 \varphi), \tag{7.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

so that the universal relation (5.42) obtained in the isotropic case does not carry over to transverse isotropy, except in the very special case in which $\mathbf{M}$ coincides with the Lagrangian principal direction $\mathbf{u}^{(1)}$ (which can only happen for an isolated value of $\gamma$ ). On the other hand, the formula (5.44) does apply, as can be shown by differentiating $\overline{\bar{W}}\left(I_{1}, I_{4}\right)$ with respect to $\gamma$ and making use of (7.28).

### 7.2. Two preferred directions

We now consider the situation in which there are two distinct preferred directions in the reference configuration. Let $\mathbf{M}$ and $\mathbf{M}^{\prime}$ denote the associated unit vectors. Then, in addition to $I_{1}, I_{2}, I_{4}, I_{5}$, the strain energy depends on the invariants

$$
\begin{equation*}
I_{6}=\mathbf{M}^{\prime} \cdot\left(\mathbf{C M}^{\prime}\right), \quad I_{7}=\mathbf{M}^{\prime} \cdot\left(\mathbf{C}^{2} \mathbf{M}^{\prime}\right), \quad I_{8}=\mathbf{M} \cdot\left(\mathbf{C M}^{\prime}\right) \tag{7.30}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that $I_{6}$ and $I_{7}$ are the counterparts for $\mathbf{M}^{\prime}$ of $I_{4}$ and $I_{5}$, respectively, and that there is now a coupling term $I_{8}$. The energy also depends explicitly on the angle between the directions, as determined by the product $\mathbf{M} \cdot \mathbf{M}^{\prime}$ (which does not depend on the deformation). There is no term $\mathbf{M} \cdot\left(\mathbf{C}^{2} \mathbf{M}^{\prime}\right)$ since it can be shown that it depends on the other invariants and on $\mathbf{M} \cdot \mathbf{M}^{\prime}$. The invariant $I_{8}$ as defined above is not unchanged with respect to reversal of $\mathbf{M}$ or $\mathbf{M}^{\prime}$ separately, but it can be made so by multiplying by $\mathbf{M} \cdot \mathbf{M}^{\prime}$. For
simplicity, however, we retain $I_{8}$ as given above and note that, by symmetry, this 'correction' is unnecessary for the problem considered in Section 7.2.1 below.

We now use the notation $\bar{W}$ to represent $W$ for an incompressible material when regarded as a function of $I_{1}, I_{2}, I_{4}, I_{5}, I_{6}, I_{7}, I_{8}$, and $\mathbf{M} \cdot \mathbf{M}^{\prime}$. The Cauchy stress tensor is then written

$$
\begin{align*}
\boldsymbol{\sigma}= & -p \mathbf{I}+2 \bar{W}_{1} \mathbf{B}+2 \bar{W}_{2}\left(I_{1} \mathbf{B}-\mathbf{B}^{2}\right)+2 \bar{W}_{4} \mathbf{F M} \otimes \mathbf{F M} \\
& +2 \bar{W}_{5}(\mathbf{F M} \otimes \mathbf{B F M}+\mathbf{B F M} \otimes \mathbf{F} \mathbf{M})+2 \bar{W}_{6} \mathbf{F} \mathbf{M}^{\prime} \otimes \mathbf{F M}^{\prime} \\
& +2 \bar{W}_{7}\left(\mathbf{F} \mathbf{M}^{\prime} \otimes \mathbf{B F} \mathbf{M}^{\prime}+\mathbf{B F} \mathbf{M}^{\prime} \otimes \mathbf{F} \mathbf{M}^{\prime}\right) \\
& +\bar{W}_{8}\left(\mathbf{F M} \otimes \mathbf{F M}^{\prime}+\mathbf{F} \mathbf{M}^{\prime} \otimes \mathbf{F M}\right) \tag{7.31}
\end{align*}
$$

where the notation $W_{i}=\partial W / \partial I_{i}$ now applies for $i=1,2,4, \ldots, 8$.
Although (7.31) is in general very complicated some useful information can be obtained by restricting attention again to pure homogeneous strains and simple shear. The extension and inflation of a tube discussed in Section 6.1 for an isotropic material will also be examined in respect of (7.31) appropriately specialized.

### 7.2.1. Pure homogeneous strain

Again we consider the pure homogeneous strain defined by (5.24) and now we include two preferred directions, symmetrically disposed in the $\left(X_{1}, X_{2}\right)$ plane and given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{M}=\cos \varphi \mathbf{e}_{1}+\sin \varphi \mathbf{e}_{2}, \quad \mathbf{M}^{\prime}=\cos \varphi \mathbf{e}_{1}-\sin \varphi \mathbf{e}_{2} \tag{7.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the angle $\varphi$ is constant and $\mathbf{e}_{1}, \mathbf{e}_{2}$ denote the Cartesian coordinate directions, see Fig. 7.1. Let the corresponding unit vectors in the deformed configuration be denoted

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{m}=\cos \varphi^{*} \mathbf{e}_{1}+\sin \varphi^{*} \mathbf{e}_{2}, \quad \mathbf{m}^{\prime}=\cos \varphi^{*} \mathbf{e}_{1}-\sin \varphi^{*} \mathbf{e}_{2} \tag{7.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $\varphi^{*}$ given by (7.18).
When expressed in terms of $\lambda_{1}$ and $\lambda_{2}$ the invariants $I_{1}, I_{2}$ are given by (7.9) and the other invariants are calculated as

$$
\begin{gather*}
I_{4}=I_{6}=\lambda_{1}^{2} \cos ^{2} \varphi+\lambda_{2}^{2} \sin ^{2} \varphi, \quad I_{5}=I_{7}=\lambda_{1}^{4} \cos ^{2} \varphi+\lambda_{2}^{4} \sin ^{2} \varphi  \tag{7.34}\\
I_{8}=\lambda_{1}^{2} \cos ^{2} \varphi-\lambda_{2}^{2} \sin ^{2} \varphi \tag{7.35}
\end{gather*}
$$



Figure 7.1. Depiction of pure homogeneous strain with two symmetrically disposed families of fibres in the ( $X_{1}, X_{2}$ ) plane.

The components of $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$ are obtained from (7.31) as

$$
\begin{align*}
\sigma_{11}= & -p+2 \bar{W}_{1} \lambda_{1}^{2}+2 \bar{W}_{2}\left(I_{1} \lambda_{1}^{2}-\lambda_{1}^{4}\right)+2\left(\bar{W}_{4}+\bar{W}_{6}+\bar{W}_{8}\right) \lambda_{1}^{2} \cos ^{2} \varphi \\
& +4\left(\bar{W}_{5}+\bar{W}_{7}\right) \lambda_{1}^{4} \cos ^{2} \varphi,  \tag{7.36}\\
\sigma_{22}= & -p+2 \bar{W}_{1} \lambda_{2}^{2}+2 \bar{W}_{2}\left(I_{1} \lambda_{2}^{2}-\lambda_{2}^{4}\right)+2\left(\bar{W}_{4}+\bar{W}_{6}-\bar{W}_{8}\right) \lambda_{2}^{2} \sin ^{2} \varphi \\
& +4\left(\bar{W}_{5}+\bar{W}_{7}\right) \lambda_{2}^{4} \sin ^{2} \varphi,  \tag{7.37}\\
\sigma_{12}= & 2\left[\bar{W}_{4}-\bar{W}_{6}+\left(\bar{W}_{5}-\bar{W}_{7}\right)\left(\lambda_{1}^{2}+\lambda_{2}^{2}\right)\right] \lambda_{1} \lambda_{2} \sin \varphi \cos \varphi,  \tag{7.38}\\
\sigma_{33}= & -p+2 \bar{W}_{1} \lambda_{3}^{2}+2 \bar{W}_{2}\left(I_{1} \lambda_{3}^{2}-\lambda_{3}^{4}\right), \quad \sigma_{13}=\sigma_{23}=0 . \tag{7.39}
\end{align*}
$$

Note that $(7.39)_{1}$ is identical in form to $(7.13)_{1}$ but is different in content since $\bar{W}$ now depends on $I_{6}, I_{7}, I_{8}$.

As for the case of transverse isotropy, $\sigma_{12} \neq 0$ in general. Thus, shear stresses are required to maintain the pure homogeneous strain and the principal axes of stress do not coincide with the Cartesian axes. However, in the special case in which the two preferred directions are mechanically equivalent the strain energy must be symmetric with respect to interchange of $I_{4}$ and $I_{6}$ and of $I_{5}$ and $I_{7}$. For the considered deformation, we have $I_{4}=I_{6}, I_{5}=I_{7}$ and it then follows that $W_{4}=W_{6}, W_{5}=W_{7}$ and hence, from (7.38), that $\sigma_{12}=0$. In this special case the principal axes of stress coincide with the Cartesian axes (i.e. with the Eulerian principal axes), and $\sigma_{11}, \sigma_{22}, \sigma_{33}$ are therefore precisely the principal Cauchy stresses $\sigma_{1}, \sigma_{2}, \sigma_{3}$.

- From (7.9), (7.34) and (7.35) we see that, just as in the case of transverse isotropy, the invariants collectively depend only on $\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}$ and $\varphi$ and we may therefore write

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{W}\left(\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}, \varphi\right)=\bar{W}\left(I_{1}, I_{2}, I_{4}, I_{5}, I_{6}, I_{7}, I_{8}, \mathbf{M} \cdot \mathbf{M}^{\prime}\right) \tag{7.40}
\end{equation*}
$$

Again, as in the transversely isotropic case, $\hat{W}$ is not symmetric with respect to interchange of $\lambda_{1}$ and $\lambda_{2}$. It is straightforward to show that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{1}-\sigma_{3}=\lambda_{1} \frac{\partial \hat{W}}{\partial \lambda_{1}}, \quad \sigma_{2}-\sigma_{3}=\lambda_{2} \frac{\partial \hat{W}}{\partial \lambda_{2}}, \tag{7.41}
\end{equation*}
$$

which are identical in form to equations (5.30) except that here $\hat{W}$ depends on $\varphi$ and is not (in general) symmetric in ( $\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}$ ). These equations describe an orthotropic material with the axes of orthotropy coinciding with the Cartesian axes.

### 7.2.2. Simple shear

We now extend the discussion of simple shear in Section 7.1.2 to the present material. For the simple shear deformation the invariants are given by

$$
\begin{align*}
& I_{1}=I_{2}=3+\gamma^{2},  \tag{7.42}\\
& I_{4}=1+\gamma \sin 2 \varphi+\gamma^{2} \sin ^{2} \varphi, \quad I_{6}=1-\gamma \sin 2 \varphi+\gamma^{2} \sin ^{2} \varphi,  \tag{7.43}\\
& I_{5}=\left(1+\gamma^{2}\right) \cos ^{2} \varphi+2 \gamma\left(2+\gamma^{2}\right) \sin \varphi \cos \varphi+\left(\gamma^{4}+3 \gamma^{2}+1\right) \sin ^{2} \varphi,  \tag{7.44}\\
& I_{7}=\left(1+\gamma^{2}\right) \cos ^{2} \varphi-2 \gamma\left(2+\gamma^{2}\right) \sin \varphi \cos \varphi+\left(\gamma^{4}+3 \gamma^{2}+1\right) \sin ^{2} \varphi,  \tag{7.45}\\
& I_{8}=\cos ^{2} \varphi-\left(1+\gamma^{2}\right) \sin ^{2} \varphi . \tag{7.46}
\end{align*}
$$

The components of the Cauchy stress tensor are now calculated as

$$
\begin{align*}
\sigma_{11}= & -p+2 \bar{W}_{1}\left(1+\gamma^{2}\right)+2 \bar{W}_{2}\left(2+\gamma^{2}\right) \\
& +2\left[\bar{W}_{4}+\bar{W}_{6}+\bar{W}_{8}+2\left(\bar{W}_{5}+\bar{W}_{7}\right)\left(1+\gamma^{2}\right)\right] \cos ^{2} \varphi \\
& +4\left[\bar{W}_{4}-\bar{W}_{6}+\left(\bar{W}_{5}-\bar{W}_{7}\right)\left(3+\gamma^{2}\right)\right] \gamma \sin \varphi \cos \varphi \\
& +2\left[\bar{W}_{4}+\bar{W}_{6}-\bar{W}_{8}+2\left(\bar{W}_{5}+\bar{W}_{7}\right)\left(2+\gamma^{2}\right)\right] \gamma^{2} \sin ^{2} \varphi,  \tag{7.47}\\
\sigma_{22}= & -p+2 \bar{W}_{1}+4 \bar{W}_{2}+2\left(\bar{W}_{4}+\bar{W}_{6}-\bar{W}_{8}\right) \sin ^{2} \varphi \\
& +4\left(\bar{W}_{5}-\bar{W}_{7}\right) \gamma \sin \varphi \cos \varphi+4\left(\bar{W}_{5}+\bar{W}_{7}\right)\left(1+\gamma^{2}\right) \sin ^{2} \varphi,(7.48)  \tag{7.48}\\
\sigma_{12}= & 2\left(\bar{W}_{1}+\bar{W}_{2}\right) \gamma+2\left(\bar{W}_{4}-\bar{W}_{6}\right) \sin \varphi \cos \varphi \\
& +2\left(\bar{W}_{4}+\bar{W}_{6}-\bar{W}_{8}\right) \gamma \sin ^{2} \varphi \\
& +2\left(\bar{W}_{5}+\bar{W}_{7}\right) \gamma\left[\cos ^{2} \varphi+\left(3+\gamma^{2}\right) \sin ^{2} \varphi\right],  \tag{7.49}\\
\sigma_{33}= & -p+2 \bar{W}_{1} \lambda_{3}^{2}+2 \bar{W}_{2}\left(I_{1} \lambda_{3}^{2}-\lambda_{3}^{4}\right), \quad \sigma_{13}=\sigma_{23}=0 . \tag{7.50}
\end{align*}
$$

Since the invariants (7.42)-(7.46) depend only on $\gamma$ and $\varphi$ we may treat the strain energy as a function of these two quantities and write $W_{\mathrm{ss}}(\gamma, \varphi)$ to
represent this, where, as in (5.43), the subscript ss stands for simple shear. It is then straightforward to show, using (7.42)-(7.46) and (7.49) that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{12}=\frac{\partial W_{\mathrm{ss}}}{\partial \gamma} \tag{7.51}
\end{equation*}
$$

exactly as in the isotropic and transversely isotropic cases.
It is interesting to note that while the orientation of the Eulerian principal axes, in the (1,2)-plane, is given in terms of the angle $\phi$ through the formula

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tan 2 \phi=\frac{2}{\gamma} \tag{7.52}
\end{equation*}
$$

the corresponding orientation of the principal axes of $\sigma$ is defined by an angle, $\phi^{*}$ say, which is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tan 2 \phi^{*}=\frac{2 \sigma_{12}}{\sigma_{11}-\sigma_{22}} \tag{7.53}
\end{equation*}
$$

In respect of (7.47)-(7.49) the right-hand side of (7.53) is not equal to that of (7.52), and hence $\phi^{*} \neq \phi$. We observe that $\phi^{*}=\phi$ if and only if the universal relation (5.42) holds.

### 7.2.3. Extension and inflation of a thick-walled tube

We now revisit the problem of extension and inflation of a thick-walled tube which was discussed in Section 6.1 for an isotropic material. Since, locally, the deformation corresponds to a pure homogeneous strain certain formulas obtained in Section 6.1 carry over to the anisotropic material considered here. We suppose that the preferred directions $\mathbf{M}$ and $\mathbf{M}^{\prime}$ are locally in the $(\Theta, Z)$-plane and symmetrically distributed with respect to the axial direction. The cylindrical polar directions are then the principal directions of strain (and stress) and the strain energy may be written in the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{W}\left(\lambda, \lambda_{z}, \varphi\right) \tag{7.54}
\end{equation*}
$$

where, as in Section $6.1, \lambda=\lambda_{2}$ and $\lambda_{z}=\lambda_{3}$ respectively are the azimuthal and axial stretches. The formulas (6.21) and (6.23) also apply here. We repeat equation (6.21) here in the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
P=\int_{\lambda_{b}}^{\lambda_{a}}\left(\lambda^{2} \lambda_{z}-1\right)^{-1} \frac{\partial \hat{W}}{\partial \lambda}\left(\lambda, \lambda_{z}, \varphi\right) \mathrm{d} \lambda \tag{7.55}
\end{equation*}
$$

with the arguments of $\hat{W}$ made explicit.
It is easy to evaluate the integral in (7.55) for particular choices of energy function, as was indicated in the case of isotropy in Section 6.1. It turns out that the qualitative nature of the results based on equation (7.55) does not depend significantly on the thickness of the wall of the tube wall. Here, therefore, it suffices to consider the thin-wall (membrane) approximation of (7.55), which has the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
P=\epsilon \lambda^{-1} \lambda_{z}^{-1} \frac{\partial \hat{W}}{\partial \lambda}\left(\lambda, \lambda_{z}, \varphi\right) \tag{7.56}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\epsilon=(B-A) / A$, as in Section 6.1 , and $\lambda$ represents any value of the azimuthal stretch through the wall.

We now illustrate the dependence of the pressure-stretch response on the degree of anisotropy by using (7.56). For this purpose we consider an energy function that is a natural extension to the type of anisotropy considered here of the isotropic law (5.21). With just a single term this has the form (see [19])

$$
\begin{align*}
\hat{W}\left(\lambda, \lambda_{z}, \varphi\right)= & {\left[\mu_{1}(\varphi)\left(\lambda^{n}-1-n \ln \lambda\right)+\mu_{2}(\varphi)\left(\lambda_{z}^{n}-1-n \ln \lambda_{z}\right)\right.} \\
& \left.+\mu_{3}\left(\lambda^{-n} \lambda_{z}^{-n}-1+n \ln \left(\lambda \lambda_{z}\right)\right)\right] / n \tag{7.57}
\end{align*}
$$

where the logarithmic terms are needed to ensure that the stresses vanish in the undeformed configuration, $\mu_{3}$ is a material constant and $\mu_{1}(\varphi)$ and $\mu_{2}(\varphi)$ are material parameters dependent of the angle $\varphi$. Note that the single-term version of (5.21) is recovered by setting $\mu_{1}=\mu_{2}=\mu_{3}=2 \mu / n$ and $n=\alpha_{1}$ since, by incompressibility, the logarithmic terms cancel.

On substitution of (7.57) into equation (7.56) we obtain, in dimensionless form,

$$
\begin{equation*}
P^{*} \equiv \lambda_{z} P / \epsilon \mu_{3}=\mu_{1}^{*} \lambda^{n-2}-\left(\mu_{1}^{*}-1\right) \lambda^{-2}-\lambda^{-n-2} \lambda_{z}^{-n} \tag{7.58}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mu_{1}^{*}=\mu_{1} / \mu_{3}$. It should be noted that (7.58) is independent of $\mu_{2}$. The results for isotropy are recovered by setting $\mu_{1}^{*}=1$. The material can be regarded as reinforced in the circumferential direction (relative to the radial direction) if $\mu_{1}^{*}>1$ and weakened if $\mu_{1}^{*}<1$. Results for $\mu_{1}^{*}=0.5,1,2$ are plotted in Fig. 7.2 for comparison, with $\lambda_{z}$ set to the value 1.2, as for Fig. 6.1.


Figure 7.2. Plot of the dimensionless pressure $P^{*}$ against the azimuthal stretch $\lambda$ for fixed $\lambda_{z}$ and for values $\mu_{1}^{*}=2,1,0.5$ of the anisotropy parameter, corresponding to the upper, middle and lower curves respectively.

We recall that for isotropy the inequality $\lambda^{2} \lambda_{z} \geq 1$ must hold for inflation following an initial axial stretch. For the considered anisotropic material this must be replaced by an inequality on $\lambda^{n}$ whose lower limit is determined by setting $P=0$ in (7.58). This is reflected in the curves in Fig. 7.2, which cut the $\lambda$ axis at different points. The upper, middle and lower curves in Fig. 7.2 correspond to $\mu_{1}^{*}=2,1,0.5$ respectively. For illustrative purposes only the value $n=10$ has been used for the above calculations.

The membrane counterpart of (7.58) for equation (6.23) has the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
F / \pi A^{2} \equiv N / \pi A^{2}-P \lambda^{2}=\epsilon\left[2 \frac{\partial \hat{W}}{\partial \lambda_{z}}\left(\lambda, \lambda_{z}, \varphi\right)-\lambda \lambda_{z}^{-1} \frac{\partial \hat{W}}{\partial \lambda}\left(\lambda, \lambda_{z}, \varphi\right)\right], \tag{7.59}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $F$ is the reduced axial load on the ends of the tube.
The combination of equations (7.56) and (7.59) with an appropriate form of strain-energy function can be used to fit data from experiments in which the reduced axial load $F$ is held constant. A representative set of data from a human iliac artery is shown in Fig. 7.3. The pressure $P$ is plotted against the circumferential stretch $\lambda$ for a range of fixed values of the reduced axial load $F$. These curves show the characteristic stiffening of the material as the radius increases.

In Fig. 7.4 the same data as in Fig. 7.3 are plotted with the pressure against the axial stretch $\lambda_{z}$. This reveals a so-called inversion effect at the value of $\lambda_{z}$ corresponding to the change from positive to negative gradients of the curves. This critical value of $\lambda_{z}$ is determined by solution of the equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\lambda \frac{\partial^{2} \hat{W}}{\partial \lambda^{2}}\left(\lambda, \lambda_{z}, \varphi\right)-2 \lambda_{z} \frac{\partial^{2} \hat{W}}{\partial \lambda \partial \lambda_{z}}\left(\lambda, \lambda_{z}, \varphi\right)+\lambda \frac{\partial \hat{W}}{\partial \lambda}\left(\lambda, \lambda_{z}, \varphi\right)=0 \tag{7.60}
\end{equation*}
$$



Figure 7.3. Typical characteristics of the response of a human iliac artery under pressure and axial load. Dependence of the internal pressure $P(\mathrm{kPa})$ on the circumferential stretch $\lambda$ at a series of fixed values of the reduced axial load.


Figure 7.4. Typical characteristics of the response of a human iliac artery under pressure and axial load. Dependence of the internal pressure $P(\mathrm{kPa})$ on the axial stretch $\lambda_{z}$ at a series of fixed values of the reduced axial load.
in conjunction with (7.59) for constant $F$, where $F^{*}=F / \pi A^{2} \epsilon$. Equation (7.60) is obtained from (7.56) and (7.59) by setting $\mathrm{d} \lambda_{z} / \mathrm{d} P=0$ at constant $F$. For further details we refer to Ogden and Schulze-Bauer [19].

Although the membrane approximation gives a good qualitative picture of the pressure-stretch behaviour it should be used with caution. For example, membrane theory is not able to account for the through-thickness stress distribution in arterial walls or the important influence of residual stresses which are present in arterial wall components. To account for these influences it is necessary to use a 'thick-wall' model. Both residual stresses and stress distributions through the wall thickness will be discussed in Chapter 8 following a treatment of some particular aspects of the influence of residual stress on the formulation of elastic constitutive laws.

## Chapter 8

## The effect of residual stress on elastic response

Thus far we have assumed that the reference configuration $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ is stress free. However, there are many situations in which a (global) stress-free reference configuration does not exist and there are so-called residual stresses not associated with a deformation and not given by a constitutive law. They may, for example, be induced by some manufacturing process or, in the case of biological tissues, be generated by the processes of growth, remodelling or adaptation. In this chapter we examine some basic aspects of the effect of residual stress on the constitutive law of a nonlinearly elastic solid.

### 8.1. Elastic response in the presence of residual stress

We suppose that the reference configuration $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ is not stress free and denote by $\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{(r)}$ the residual stress in $\mathrm{B}_{r}$. Since this is the reference configuration there is no distinction between the Cauchy stress in $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ and the nominal stress $\mathbf{S}^{(r)}$ relative to $\mathrm{B}_{r}$. In general, the residual stress is not obtained from a strain-energy function, and we may take the strain-energy function $W$ to be measured from $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ and to vanish in $\mathrm{B}_{r}$. The stress calculated from this energy function must reduce to the residual stress when evaluated in $\mathrm{B}_{r}$. We shall discuss this further in Section 8.2.

The residual stress must satisfy the equilibrium equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Div} \mathbf{S}^{(r)}=\mathbf{0} \quad \text { in } \mathrm{B}_{r}, \tag{8.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the Div operator refers to the position vector $\mathbf{X}$ in $\mathrm{B}_{r}$.

If the boundary $\partial \mathrm{B}_{r}$ is traction free (unloaded) then, additionally, the residual stress must satisfy the boundary conditions

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{S}^{(r)^{T}} \mathbf{N}=\mathbf{0} \quad \text { on } \partial \mathrm{B}_{r} \tag{8.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now, since

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Div}\left(\mathbf{S}^{(r)} \otimes \mathbf{X}\right)=\left(\operatorname{Div} \mathbf{S}^{(r)}\right) \otimes \mathbf{X}+\mathbf{S}^{(r)} \tag{8.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

it follows from (8.1), (8.2) and by use of the divergence theorem that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{\mathrm{B}_{r}} \mathbf{S}^{(r)} \mathrm{d} V=\mathbf{0} . \tag{8.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

An immediate consequence of (8.4) is that residual stress cannot be uniform. In other words, if, in a residually-stressed configuration, the boundary $\partial \mathrm{B}_{r}$ is load free then the residual stress distribution is necessarily inhomogeneous and is therefore geometry dependent. A further consequence is that the material response of a residually-stressed body relative to the residually-stressed configuration, and hence the constitutive law, is geometry dependent and inhomogeneous. If, however, $\partial \mathrm{B}_{r}$ is not traction free and all or part of the boundary is fixed spatially then the above conclusion requires modification. We do not pursue this here.

Residual stress places restrictions on the material symmetry in $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ and, in view of the above remarks, the material symmetry may therefore vary from point to point within the considered material body. The constitutive laws resulting from these restrictions are, in general, very complicated, and we shall not discuss the associated analysis in detail. We remark, however, that, in the presence of a residual stress and without any preferred directions, the elastic strain energy relative to $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ depends on the independent invariants of $\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{(r)}$ and the Cauchy-Green deformation tensor $\mathbf{C}$ and their combinations. Moreover, if there are also preferred directions in $\mathrm{B}_{r}$, such as $\mathbf{M}$, then further independent invariants involving $\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{(r)}, \mathbf{C}$ and $\mathbf{M} \otimes \mathbf{M}$ are needed. It is left as an exercise to determine the number of independent invariants of (a) $\mathbf{C}$ and $\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{(r)}$ for the cases in which $\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{(r)}$ has one, two or three distinct principal values, and (b) $\mathbf{C}, \boldsymbol{\sigma}^{(r)}$ and $\mathbf{M} \otimes \mathbf{M}$ for the cases in which $\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{(r)}$ has one, two or three distinct principal values.

Here we shall adopt a simpler approach and examine what restrictions are imposed on the residual stress by specific material symmetries. In this we
follow the work of Coleman and Noll [3], Hoger [7] and the article by Ogden in [10].

Suppose that $\mathbf{Q}$ is a rotation tensor belonging to a symmetry group relative to $\mathrm{B}_{r}$. Then, by combining the stress-deformation relation (3.30) for the nominal stress (relative to $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ ) with the objectivity and material symmetry requirements, we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{Q F})=\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{F}) \mathbf{Q}^{T} \tag{8.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

for all proper orthogonal $\mathbf{Q}$, and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{F Q})=\mathbf{Q}^{T} \mathbf{h}(\mathbf{F}) \tag{8.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

for all members $\mathbf{Q}$ of the symmetry group. By setting $\mathbf{F}=\mathbf{I}$ and $\mathbf{S}^{(r)}=\mathbf{h}(\mathbf{I})$ and using (8.5) and (8.6), we then obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{S}^{(r)} \mathbf{Q}=\mathbf{Q} \mathbf{S}^{(r)} \tag{8.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

or, equivalently,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{Q} \boldsymbol{\sigma}^{(r)} \mathbf{Q}^{T}=\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{(r)} \tag{8.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

for every member $\mathbf{Q}$ of the symmetry group. Thus, equation (8.7) imposes restrictions on the form of $\mathbf{S}^{(r)}$. We now examine three specific material symmetries in order to determine the nature of these restrictions.

### 8.1.1. Isotropy

For isotropic response equation (8.8) must hold for all rotations $\mathbf{Q}$. This implies that the residual stress has the form $\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{(r)}=\sigma^{(r)} \mathbf{I}$, where $\sigma^{(r)}$ is a scalar. The equilibrium equation (8.1) reduces to $\operatorname{Grad} \sigma^{(r)}=\mathbf{0}$, so that $\sigma^{(r)}$ is constant. Application of the boundary condition (8.2) then shows that $\sigma^{(r)} \equiv 0$.

Thus, residual stress cannot be supported by an isotropic body whatever the geometry of the body if the boundary is traction free. This is an important result in the context of soft tissues, for some of which residual stress contributes to their effective function. It therefore emphasizes the need to consider soft tissues as anisotropic materials.

### 8.1.2. Transverse isotropy

If the material response is transversely isotropic relative to $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ then there is a preferred direction, defined by a unit vector, denoted $\mathbf{k}$, which will in general depend on position in the material. The symmetry group consists of all rotations $\mathbf{Q}$ that preserve or reverse $\mathbf{k}$. It may be shown, by following the procedure outlined for the isotropic case, that $\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{(r)}$ must have two equal principal values and is expressible in the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{(r)}=\sigma_{1}^{(r)}(\mathbf{I}-\mathbf{k} \otimes \mathbf{k})+\sigma_{3}^{(r)} \mathbf{k} \otimes \mathbf{k} \tag{8.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\sigma_{1}^{(r)}=\sigma_{2}^{(r)}$ and $\sigma_{3}^{(r)}$ are the principal values, in general dependent on position.

### 8.1.3. Orthotropy

In the case of orthotropic response the material symmetry identifies three mutually orthogonal directions, here specified by the unit vectors $\mathbf{k}_{1}, \mathbf{k}_{2}, \mathbf{k}_{3}$. The symmetry group consists of rotations through $\pi$ about each $\mathbf{k}_{i}, i \in$ $\{1,2,3\}$ together with reversal of each $\mathbf{k}_{i}$. The resulting form of $\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{(r)}$, obtained using (8.8), is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{(r)}=\sigma_{1}^{(r)} \mathbf{k}_{1} \otimes \mathbf{k}_{1}+\sigma_{2}^{(r)} \mathbf{k}_{2} \otimes \mathbf{k}_{2}+\sigma_{3}^{(r)} \mathbf{k}_{3} \otimes \mathbf{k}_{3} \tag{8.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

the principal values of $\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{(r)}$ being distinct and associated with principal directions $\mathbf{k}_{1}, \mathbf{k}_{2}, \mathbf{k}_{3}$. In general, $\mathbf{k}_{1}, \mathbf{k}_{2}, \mathbf{k}_{3}$ and $\sigma_{1}^{(r)}, \sigma_{2}^{(r)}, \sigma_{3}^{(r)}$ depend on position. Of course, $\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{(r)}$ can always be put in the form (8.10) for some orthonormal basis $\mathbf{k}_{1}, \mathbf{k}_{2}, \mathbf{k}_{3}$ whatever the material symmetry, but here $\mathbf{k}_{1}, \mathbf{k}_{2}, \mathbf{k}_{3}$ are specifically determined by the symmetry.

An important special case is that in which one of the principal directions, $\mathbf{k}_{3}$ say, is independent of position. It follows on substitution of (8.10) into the equilibrium equation (8.1) that $\sigma_{3}^{(r)}$ is independent of the Cartesian coordinate associated with $\mathbf{k}_{3}$. If we identify this direction with the axis of a right circular cylindrical tube then application of the boundary condition (8.2) on the ends of the tube leads to $\sigma_{3}^{(r)} \equiv 0$. In terms of cylindrical polar coordinates $(R, \Theta, Z)$ in $\mathrm{B}_{r}$, this means that there is no dependence on $Z$. If, further, there is no dependence on $\Theta$ then the equilibrium equation (8.1) reduces to the radial equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\mathrm{d} \sigma_{R R}^{(r)}}{\mathrm{d} R}+\frac{\sigma_{R R}^{(r)}-\sigma_{\Theta \Theta}^{(r)}}{R}=0 \tag{8.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

together with the azimuthal equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\mathrm{d} \sigma_{R \Theta}^{(r)}}{\mathrm{d} R}+\frac{2}{R} \sigma_{R \Theta}^{(r)}=0 \tag{8.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\sigma_{R R}^{(r)}, \sigma_{R \Theta}^{(r)}, \sigma_{\Theta \Theta}^{(r)}$ are the relevant components of $\sigma^{(r)}$.
It follows from (8.12) and the zero traction boundary conditions on the cylindrical surfaces that $\sigma_{R \Theta}^{(r)} \equiv 0$ and hence that $\mathbf{k}_{1}$ and $\mathbf{k}_{2}$ coincide with the polar coordinate axes and $\sigma_{R R}^{(r)}=\sigma_{1}^{(r)}, \sigma_{\Theta \Theta}^{(r)}=\sigma_{2}^{(r)}$. Equation (8.11) then remains and is coupled with the boundary conditions

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{1}^{(r)}=0 \quad \text { on } R=A, B \tag{8.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

Equation (8.11) and the boundary conditions (8.13) are important in connection with the analysis of the effect of residual stress on the elastic response of an artery treated as a circular cylindrical tube subject to extension and inflation, which will be discussed in Chapter 9.

### 8.2. Change in reference configuration and strain energy

Let $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ be a residually-stressed configuration, $\mathbf{F}$ the deformation gradient in a deformed configuration $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ measured relative to $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ and $W(\mathbf{F})$ the strain energy per unit volume in $\mathrm{B}_{r}$. Suppose that there exists a reference configuration, denoted $\overline{\mathrm{B}}_{r}$, that is stress free and let $\mathbf{P}$ be the deformation gradient of $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ relative to $\overline{\mathrm{B}}_{r}$, as depicted in Fig. 8.1. Then, the deformation gradient in $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ relative to $\overline{\mathrm{B}}_{r}$, denoted $\overline{\mathbf{F}}$, is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\overline{\mathbf{F}}=\mathbf{F P} \tag{8.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $\bar{W}(\overline{\mathbf{F}})$ denote the strain energy in $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ relative to $\overline{\mathrm{B}}_{r}$ per unit volume in $\overline{\mathrm{B}}_{r}$. Then, for an incompressible material, we must have the connection

$$
\begin{equation*}
W(\mathbf{F})=\bar{W}(\overline{\mathbf{F}})-\bar{W}(\mathbf{P}) \tag{8.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

The corresponding formula for an unconstrained material is similar but involves factors related to the determinants of the deformation gradients.

According to the discussion in Section 3.4, if $\mathcal{G}$ denotes the symmetry group relative to $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ and $\overline{\mathcal{G}}$ that relative to $\overline{\mathrm{B}}_{r}$ then $\mathcal{G}=\mathbf{P} \overline{\mathcal{G}} \mathbf{P}^{-1}$. Thus, in the situation where a global stress-free configuration exists the material symmetry in a residually-stressed configuration can be determined directly from


Figure 8.1. Schematic of the stress-free reference configuration $\overline{\mathrm{B}}_{r}$, the residually-stressed reference configuration $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ and the deformed configuration $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ showing the connecting deformation gradients $\mathbf{P}, \mathbf{F}$ and $\overline{\mathbf{F}}$.
that in the stress-free configuration without the need to consider invariants associated with the residual stress. The existence of such a stress-free configuration is problematic in general, but in some circumstances a configuration that is approximately stress free can be considered useful (and is the basis of part of the analysis in Chapter 9). The stresses associated with the different configurations are related in the following way.

For an incompressible material the nominal stresses, denoted $\mathbf{S}$ and $\overline{\mathbf{S}}$, relative to $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ and $\overline{\mathrm{B}}_{r}$ respectively are given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{S}=\frac{\partial W}{\partial \mathbf{F}}(\mathbf{F})-p \mathbf{F}^{-1}, \quad \overline{\mathbf{S}}=\frac{\partial \bar{W}}{\partial \overline{\mathbf{F}}}(\overline{\mathbf{F}})-\bar{p} \overline{\mathbf{F}}^{-1} \tag{8.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

while the Cauchy stress $\boldsymbol{\sigma}=\mathbf{F S}=\overline{\mathbf{F}} \overline{\mathbf{S}}$ in $\mathrm{B}_{t}$ is independent of the choice of reference configuration. Thus, we must have the connections

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{S}=\mathbf{P} \overline{\mathbf{S}}, \quad \bar{p}=p \tag{8.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

which may also be deduced by differentiation of (8.15) and use of (8.14).
When evaluated in $\mathrm{B}_{r}$ these give

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{S}^{(r)}=\boldsymbol{\sigma}^{(r)}=\frac{\partial W}{\partial \mathbf{F}}(\mathbf{I})-p^{(r)} \mathbf{I}=\mathbf{P} \overline{\mathbf{S}}^{(r)} \tag{8.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $p^{(r)}$ is the value of $p$ in $\mathrm{B}_{r}, \overline{\mathbf{S}}^{(r)}$ is the corresponding value of the residual stress and $\mathbf{I}$ is the identity in $\mathrm{B}_{r}$.

## Chapter 9

## Application to arterial tissue

When a length of artery is excised from a body it contracts. Thus, in vivo arteries are stretched (i.e. subject to a large axial deformation) and tethered (i.e. held in place) by the surrounding tissue. However, an excised artery, although in an unloaded configuration, i.e. it is not subject to any axial load or to any tractions on its inner and outer surfaces, is not unstressed. In fact, there is a residual stress distribution through the artery wall, and this has a very important influence on the mechanical response of the artery under physiological conditions. The existence of the residual stresses is demonstrated by the so-called 'opening angle experiment' in which a short length of artery in the form of a ring is cut radially. The ring springs open to form an open sector, thus indicating the presence of a compressive circumferential stress in the inner part of the wall of the ring and a tensile circumferential stress in the outer part. The magnitude of the opening angle gives a rough estimate of the residual stress (at least the circumferential residual stress, but it should be noted that there will in general also be residual axial and radial stresses). However, even such an open sector is not stress free since the opening angles of circumferentially separated layers are different.

In most analyses in the literature to date, however, the opened-up sector is assumed, for simplicity, to be stress free in order to facilitate calculation of the (residual) stress required to re-form the intact ring (the unloaded configuration). It is normally assumed that the ring is a circular annulus, that the opened-up sector is also circular and that the deformation required to
re-form the ring depends only on the radius. Any assumptions that are less simple than these would almost certainly require a purely numerical treatment. Some aspects of the opening angle approach are discussed in Section 9.2 . The opening angle experiment gives only a very rough estimate of the residual stress, and a detailed understanding of the mechanical influence of residual stress therefore remains to be developed. Influences that need to be accounted for are, for example, growth, remodelling and adaptation since these are clearly candidates for generating residual stresses. Analysis of such effects is at an early stage of development and much more needs to be done in this area.

The residual stresses have an influence on the overall behaviour of an artery under extension and internal pressure and, more significantly, on the stress and strain distributions through the arterial wall. It has been suggested in the literature that in the physiological state a healthy artery has an essentially constant circumferential stress in each layer of its wall (note that because of different material properties in different layers of the artery wall there is a discontinuity in the circumferential stress across a layer boundary, and also, in general, in the axial stress). This can only be the case if there is residual stress present. Some consequences of the assumption of uniform circumferential stress will be examined in Section 9.3. It is interesting to note that the residual stress distributions calculated on the basis of the opening angle method and the uniform circumferential stress assumption are very similar in character.

We begin by extending our previous analysis of the extension and inflation of a thick-walled circular cylindrical tube to allow for residual stresses.

### 9.1. Extension and inflation of a thick-walled tube

In Section 7.2.3 the problem of extension and inflation of a thick-walled tube was analyzed for the case of an orthotropic material. Here we adapt that theory so as to incorporate residual stresses. The strain energy may again be written in the form (7.54) and is again denoted by $\hat{W}\left(\lambda, \lambda_{z}, \varphi\right)$, with $\lambda$ and $\lambda_{z}$ being the azimuthal and axial stretches. We emphasize, once more, that $\hat{W}\left(\lambda, \lambda_{z}, \varphi\right)$ is not in general symmetric in $\lambda$ and $\lambda_{z}$ and that the angle $\varphi$ may depend on $R$.

The principal Cauchy stress differences are given (locally) by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{3}-\sigma_{1}=\lambda_{z} \hat{W}_{\lambda_{z}}, \quad \sigma_{2}-\sigma_{1}=\lambda \hat{W}_{\lambda} . \tag{9.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Residual stresses associated with the unloaded (traction-free) configuration may be incorporated through $\hat{W}$, in which case the residual stress differences are given by (9.1) evaluated for $\lambda=\lambda_{z}=1$ and subject to $\sigma_{3}^{(r)}=0$, as discussed for the case of orthotropy in Section 8.1. Alternatively, it may be convenient to separate out from the residual stresses the additional stresses required to deform the material from the unloaded configuration. It is then these additional stresses that are accounted for through $\hat{W}$ via (9.1), but the residual stresses (which, in general, are unknown) then have to be incorporated separately. This approach enables the separate contribution of the residual stresses to be highlighted, and is therefore adopted here. Accordingly, and consistently with the assumed cylindrical orthotropy, we replace (9.1) by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{3}-\sigma_{1}=\lambda_{z} \hat{W}_{\lambda_{z}}+\sigma_{3}^{(r)}-\sigma_{1}^{(r)}, \quad \sigma_{2}-\sigma_{1}=\lambda \hat{W}_{\lambda}+\sigma_{2}^{(r)}-\sigma_{1}^{(r)} \tag{9.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\sigma_{1}^{(r)}, \sigma_{2}^{(r)}$ and $\sigma_{3}^{(r)}=0$ denote the residual principal Cauchy stresses in the unloaded configuration, in which the terms in $\hat{W}$ in (9.2) vanish. Note that $\sigma_{1}^{(r)}$ and $\sigma_{2}^{(r)}$ are independent of the deformation from the unloaded configuration (i.e. they depend only on $R$ ).

For the considered cylindrically symmetric deformation the (radial) equilibrium equation for the deformed configurations is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\mathrm{d} \sigma_{1}}{\mathrm{~d} r}+\frac{1}{r}\left(\sigma_{1}-\sigma_{2}\right)=0 \tag{9.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

in terms of the principal Cauchy stresses. The solution of equation (9.3) should satisfy the boundary conditions

$$
\sigma_{1}= \begin{cases}-P & \text { on } \quad r=a  \tag{9.4}\\ 0 & \text { on } \quad r=b\end{cases}
$$

corresponding to pressure $P(\geq 0)$ on the inside of the tube and zero traction on the outside. We do not include the effect of tethering and surrounding material here.

In the unloaded configuration the residual stresses must satisfy the equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\mathrm{d} \sigma_{1}^{(r)}}{\mathrm{d} R}+\frac{1}{R}\left(\sigma_{1}^{(r)}-\sigma_{2}^{(r)}\right)=0 \tag{9.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

and this is coupled with the boundary conditions

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{1}^{(r)}=0 \quad \text { on } \quad R=A \text { and } R=B \tag{9.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

By making use of (6.10) and (6.12)-(6.14) together with equatior.s (9.2)(9.6), we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
P=\int_{\lambda_{b}}^{\lambda_{a}}\left(\lambda^{2} \lambda_{z}-1\right)^{-1} \frac{\partial \hat{W}}{\partial \lambda} \mathrm{~d} \lambda+\lambda_{z}^{-1} \int_{A}^{B} \frac{R^{2}}{r^{2}} \frac{\mathrm{~d} \sigma_{1}^{(r)}}{\mathrm{d} R} \mathrm{~d} R, \tag{9.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

where, as in (6.21), the independent variable has been changed from $r$ to $\lambda$ in the first integral, while in the second integral

$$
\begin{equation*}
r^{2}=a^{2}+\lambda_{z}^{-1}\left(R^{2}-A^{2}\right) . \tag{9.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

When the residual stress is unknown the latter term in (9.7) cannot be determined. When the residual stress is absent the formula (7.55) is recovered.

Since, from (6.13), $\lambda_{b}$ depends on $\lambda_{a}$, equation (9.7) provides an expression for $P$ as a function of $\lambda_{a}$ when $\lambda_{z}$ is fixed provided that the distribution of residual stress is known. In order to hold $\lambda_{z}$ fixed an axial load, $N$ say, must be applied to the ends of the tube. Recalling that $\sigma_{3}^{(r)}=0$, this can be expressed, after some rearrangements, in the form

$$
\begin{align*}
N / \pi A^{2}= & \left(\lambda_{a}^{2} \lambda_{z}-1\right) \int_{\lambda_{b}}^{\lambda_{a}}\left(\lambda^{2} \lambda_{z}-1\right)^{-2}\left(2 \lambda_{z} \frac{\partial \hat{W}}{\partial \lambda_{z}}-\lambda \frac{\partial \hat{W}}{\partial \lambda}\right) \lambda \mathrm{d} \lambda+P \lambda_{a}^{2} \\
& -\lambda_{z}^{-1} \int_{A}^{B}\left(\sigma_{1}^{(r)}+\sigma_{2}^{(r)}\right) R \mathrm{~d} R / A^{2}, \tag{9.9}
\end{align*}
$$

and, as for $P$, this can only be calculated if the residual stress is known.
The formulas (9.7) and (9.9) are valid for a tube with any number of concentric layers and for a general strain energy with the specified symmetry. In general, $\hat{W}$ will be different for each layer, or, at least, the angle $\varphi$ will be different in each layer. The radial stress is continuous across the boundary between two layers but, as noted above, the circumferential stress is in general discontinuous at such a boundary.

At this point we emphasize that the residual stress distribution is unknown, and, therefore, to proceed further we require some means of determining or estimating it. For this purpose some additional information is needed. One possible approach is to take the opened-up sector of an arterial ring after a radial cut to correspond to the unstressed configuration and to investigate the consequences of this assumption. For a thin layer this can be regarded as a reasonable approximation. We now examine some aspects of this 'opening angle experiment'.

### 9.2. The opening angle method

In Fig. 9.1 an arterial ring in three different configurations is depicted. Figure 9.1 (b) shows the cross-section of an intact artery in the unloaded configuration, while (c) corresponds to an artery subject to internal pressure $P$. The deformation from (b) to (c) has already been discussed. Here, we focus on the deformation from the opened-up configuration, shown in Fig. 9.1(a), to the unloaded configuration (b). For reference, we recall that the strain energy associated with the deformation from (b) to (c) is given by $\hat{W}\left(\lambda, \lambda_{z}, \varphi\right)$, where $\lambda_{z}$ (constant) is the axial stretch and $\lambda=r / R$ is the circumferential stretch. The fibre angle in (b) is $\varphi$.
(a)

(b)

(c)


Figure 9.1. Arterial ring: (a) opened-up configuration; (b) unloaded intact ring; (c) deformed configuration under pressure $P$.

We assume that the sector in (a) is circular and has an opening angle $\alpha$, as indicated in the figure. It should be noted, however, that a different definition of opening angle is often used in the literature. For convenience we introduce the notation

$$
\begin{equation*}
k=2 \pi /(2 \pi-\alpha), \quad 1 \leq k<\infty, \tag{9.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

as a measure of the opening angle. In the deformation from (a) to (b) we assume that there is a uniform stretch $\lambda_{z o}$ induced in the axial direction. The radial part of the deformation is then given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
R^{2}=A^{2}+k^{-1} \lambda_{z o}^{-1}\left(R_{o}^{2}-A_{o}^{2}\right), \tag{9.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $R_{o}$ is the radial coordinate in (a) and $A_{o}$ is the inner radius. The associated circumferential stretch, denoted $\lambda_{o}$, is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\lambda_{o}=k R / R_{o}, \tag{9.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

and we denote by $\varphi_{o}$ the fibre angle in (a). In the deformation from (a) to (b) the fibre angles are related by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tan \varphi=\lambda_{o} \lambda_{z o}^{-1} \tan \varphi_{o} \tag{9.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

Next, we assume that the deformation from (a) to (b) is an elastic deformation and described by the strain energy $\hat{W}_{o}\left(\lambda_{o}, \lambda_{z o}, \varphi_{o}\right)$, where the subscript $o$ is attached to $\hat{W}$ since, in general, the material response relative to (a) will be different from that relative to (b) even after accounting for the change in fibre angle because, in general, the deformation induces anisotropy in the response relative to (b) separate from the anisotropy associated with the fibres.

In most analyses it is assumed that the configuration (a) is stress free. We now show that (under the restrictions adopted) this assumption is valid since the choice of geometry necessarily leads to (a) being stress free. Suppose that (a) is not stress free. The geometry ensures that the principal axes of strain are radial and circumferential. Since the deformation is independent of the polar coordinate angle, denoted $\Theta_{o}$, it follows that the principal axes of stress coincide with those of strain and that the only equilibrium equation not satisfied trivially in (a) is the radial equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\mathrm{d} \sigma_{o 1}^{(r)}}{\mathrm{d} R_{o}}+\frac{1}{R_{o}}\left(\sigma_{o 1}^{(r)}-\sigma_{o 2}^{(r)}\right)=0, \tag{9.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\sigma_{o 1}^{(r)}$ and $\sigma_{o 2}^{(r)}$ are, respectively, the radial and circumferential (residual) principal stresses in (a). Since the load must vanish pointwise on the (flat) ends of the opened-up ring we must have $\sigma_{o 2}^{(r)}=0$ on those ends (on which $\Theta_{o}$ is constant). It follows from (9.14) that $\mathrm{d}\left(R_{o} \sigma_{o 1}^{(r)}\right) / \mathrm{d} R_{o}=0$ on the ends, and hence for all $\Theta_{o}$. Integration of this and application of the zero traction condition $\sigma_{o 1}^{(r)}=0$ on $R_{o}=A_{o}$ shows that $\sigma_{o 1}^{(r)} \equiv 0$ and hence, by (9.14), $\sigma_{o 2}^{(r)} \equiv 0$.

This result applies for one layer or for two or more concentric layers, and hence, in particular, for the case of two layers, the interface must form a perfect geometrical match in the configuration (a). In practice this is unlikely to happen, and experiments have shown that this not the case. The length of the outer boundary of the middle layer of an arterial wall (the media) is not in general the same as the length of the inner boundary of the outer layer (the adventitia) in the opened-up configuration. Moreover, the curvatures of
these boundaries are not in general the same. For the media and adventitia to fit together in the opened-up configuration there will necessarily be residual stresses in that configuration. In view of the above analysis such a configuration cannot be described by the geometry discussed above and the deformation from (a) to (b) must depend on $\Theta_{o}$, and possibly also on the axial coordinate $Z$. The analysis associated with this more general geometry is, of course, more complicated than described above and will undoubtedly require numerical treatment. In particular, the plane strain assumption is unlikely to be a good approximation to the real situation for a short length of artery. Specifically, the assumption that $\lambda_{z o}$ is uniform is untenable without the application of an axial load, which we are omitting from consideration here. A further comment on this is made below. The analysis here is based on (9.11) with $\lambda_{z o}$ constant.

The residual stress distribution in (b) is governed by equation (9.5), which, on integration, gives

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{1}^{(r)}=\int_{A}^{R}\left(\sigma_{2}^{(r)}-\sigma_{1}^{(r)}\right) \frac{\mathrm{d} R}{R} \tag{9.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

but now the integrand in (9.15) is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{2}^{(r)}-\sigma_{1}^{(r)}=\lambda_{o} \hat{W}_{o \lambda_{o}}\left(\lambda_{o}, \lambda_{z o}, \varphi_{o}\right) \tag{9.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus, in principle, the residual stress can be calculated. However, this requires some additional information.

First, we note that if $B_{o}$ denotes the outer radius in (a) then the geometrical quantities in (a) and (b) are related by

$$
\begin{equation*}
B^{2}=A^{2}+k^{-1} \lambda_{z o}^{-1}\left(B_{o}^{2}-A_{o}^{2}\right) \tag{9.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

Secondly, by applying the boundary condition $\sigma_{1}^{(r)}=0$ on $R=B$ to (9.15) we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{A}^{B} \lambda_{o} \hat{W}_{o \lambda_{o}}\left(\lambda_{o}, \lambda_{z o}, \varphi_{o}\right) \frac{\mathrm{d} R}{R}=0 \tag{9.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

or, equivalently, by changing the integration variable from $R$ to $\lambda_{o}$ using (9.11) and (9.12),

$$
\begin{equation*}
\int_{\lambda_{o b}}^{\lambda_{o a}} \frac{\hat{W}_{o \lambda_{o}}\left(\lambda_{o}, \lambda_{z o}, \varphi_{o}\right)}{\lambda_{o}^{2} \lambda_{z o}-k} \mathrm{~d} \lambda_{o}=0 \tag{9.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\lambda_{o a}$ and $\lambda_{o b}$ are the values of $\lambda_{o}$ on the boundaries $R_{o}=A_{o}$ and $R_{o}=B_{o}$ respectively.

Since our objective is to calculate the residual stress distribution, we suppose that $k, A_{o}, B_{o}$ and $\lambda_{z o}$ are known. Equations (9.17) and (9.19) are then two equations from which to determine $A$ and $B$, the latter equation depending on the material properties through $\hat{W}$ and $\varphi_{0}$. Note that $A, B, A_{o}, B_{o}$ occur in (9.19) only through the limits. Once $A$ and $B$ are determined the residual stresses can be calculated from (9.15) and (9.16). In this way the residual stresses in the unloaded configuration can be determined as functions of the opening angle.

In the above considerations we have not made use of the equation

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{3}^{(r)}-\sigma_{1}^{(r)}=\lambda_{z o} \hat{W}_{o \lambda_{z o}}\left(\lambda_{o}, \lambda_{z o}, \varphi_{o}\right) . \tag{9.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

This is important to note since the zero axial load condition $\sigma_{3}^{(r)}=0$ in (b) is not in general compatible with the assumed geometrical transformation from (a) to (b). Thus, ( 9.20 ) must be regarded as giving the stress distribution $\sigma_{3}^{(r)}$ needed to maintain the cylindrical geometry in (b), in particular uniform $\lambda_{z o}$. As is done in some treatments, this problem can be circumvented by setting to zero the total axial load

$$
\begin{equation*}
2 \pi \int_{A}^{B} \sigma_{3}^{(r)} R \mathrm{~d} R \tag{9.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

so as to determine the value of $\lambda_{z o}$. Alternatively, $\lambda_{z o}$ can be prescribed and $\sigma_{3}^{(r)}$ calculated from (9.20) once $\sigma_{1}^{(r)}$ has been determined by the procedure outlined above.

Some results based on the latter approach are shown in Fig. 9.2 with $\lambda_{z o}$ set to 1. In Fig.9.2(a) dimensionless radial and circumferential residual


Figure 9.2. (a) Plot, in dimensionless form, of the residual radial stress (dashed curve) and residual circumferential stress (continuous curve); $k=1.5$ : (b) comparison of the residual circumferential stresses for $k=1.5,1.6,1.7$.
stresses are plotted against the dimensionless radius $R_{o} / A_{o}$ with $B_{o} / A_{o}=$ 1.2. An opening angle of $2 \pi / 3$, corresponding to $k=1.5$, has been selected. The calculations are based on use of the energy function (7.57) and the nondimensionalization is through division by the constant $\left|\mu_{3}\right|$. Figure $9.2(\mathrm{~b})$ shows a comparison of the circumferential stresses for three different opening angles, corresponding to $k=1.5,1.6,1.7$. Two features should be noted. First, the circumferential stress is compressive on the inner boundary and tensile on the outer boundary; second, the maximum magnitudes of the stresses increase with the value of $k$. The point at which the stress vanishes is slightly different for the three curves although this is not apparent on the scale used here. The radial stress likewise increases with $k$ but remains very small compared with the circumferential stress and hence the corresponding comparison is not shown.

If it is not assumed that $\lambda_{z o}$ is uniform then the problem becomes more difficult because the deformation from (a) to (b) then necessarily involves shearing through the wall thickness.

### 9.3. Uniform circumferential stress

For simplicity of illustration we restrict attention here to a tube with a single layer, but the analysis (although somewhat more complicated) can easily be carried over to a tube with two or more layers. If the circumferential stress $\sigma_{2}=\sigma_{20}$ is assumed to be constant then it follows from the equilibrium equation (9.3) and the boundary conditions (9.4) that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{20}=\frac{P_{0} a_{0}}{b_{0}-a_{0}}, \quad \sigma_{10}=\sigma_{20}\left(1-\frac{b_{0}}{r_{0}}\right) \tag{9.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the zero subscript indicates evaluation at the normal physiological pressure (denoted $P_{0}$ ) and

$$
\begin{equation*}
r_{0}^{2}=a_{0}^{2}+\lambda_{z 0}^{-1}\left(R^{2}-A^{2}\right) . \tag{9.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that the zero subscript ${ }_{0}$ should be distinguished from the 'oh' subscript $o$ used earlier.

Use of equations (8.13), (9.2) $)_{2}$, (9.3) and (9.5) then enables the residual radial stress to be calculated explicitly as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{1}^{(r)}=\frac{P_{0} a_{0} b_{0}}{b_{0}-a_{0}} \frac{1}{2 c_{0}} \log \left(\frac{\left(r_{0}-c_{0}\right)\left(a_{0}+c_{0}\right)}{\left(r_{0}+c_{0}\right)\left(a_{0}-c_{0}\right)}\right)-\int_{A}^{R} \lambda_{0} \hat{W}_{\lambda}\left(\lambda_{0}, \lambda_{z 0}, \varphi\right) \frac{\mathrm{d} R}{R}, \tag{9.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
c_{0}=\left(a_{0}^{2}-\lambda_{z 0}^{-1} A^{2}\right)^{1 / 2} \tag{9.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

The corresponding residual circumferential stress is then obtained using (9.5). This leads to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{2}^{(r)}=\sigma_{1}^{(r)}-\lambda_{0} \hat{W}_{\lambda}\left(\lambda_{0}, \lambda_{z 0}, \varphi\right)+\frac{a_{0} b_{0} P_{0}}{\left(b_{0}-a_{0}\right) r_{0}} \tag{9.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

Once the residual stresses have been calculated for any given form of $\hat{W}$, the pressure $P$ in a general (cylindrically symmetric) configuration can be calculated from (9.7) and the corresponding stresses from (9.2) and (9.3). The axial load $N$ can be obtained from (9.9).

By applying the boundary condition (9.6) at $R=B$ to (9.24) we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{P_{0} a_{0} b_{0}}{b_{0}-a_{0}} \frac{1}{2 c_{0}} \log \left(\frac{\left(b_{0}-c_{0}\right)\left(a_{0}+c_{0}\right)}{\left(b_{0}+c_{0}\right)\left(a_{0}-c_{0}\right)}\right)=\int_{A}^{B} \lambda_{0} \hat{W}_{\lambda}\left(\lambda_{0}, \lambda_{z 0}, \varphi\right) \frac{\mathrm{d} R}{R} \tag{9.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since, from (9.23), $b_{0}^{2}=a_{0}^{2}+\lambda_{z 0}^{-1}\left(B^{2}-A^{2}\right)$, equation (9.27) provides a connection between the pressure $P_{0}$ and the internal radius $a_{0}$ (equivalently, $\left.\lambda_{0 a}=a_{0} / A\right)$ for any given value of the axial stretch $\lambda_{z 0}$ and aspect ratio $B / A$.

A representative plot of the residual stresses is shown in Fig. 9.3 in dimensionless form with the dimensionless stresses defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{1}^{(r) *}=\sigma_{1}^{(r)} l / \mu_{3}, \quad \sigma_{2}^{(r) *}=\sigma_{2}^{(r)} l / \mu_{3} \tag{9.28}
\end{equation*}
$$



Figure 9.3. Plot of the dimensionless residual stress distribution for a typical member of the class of anisotropic strain-energy functions (7.57) based on equations (9.24) (radial stress - dashed curve) and (9.26) (circumferential stress continuous curve).
where $l>0$ is defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
l=\log \left(\frac{\left(b_{0}-c_{0}\right)\left(a_{0}+c_{0}\right)}{\left(b_{0}+c_{0}\right)\left(a_{0}-c_{0}\right)}\right) \tag{9.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

and $\mu_{3}$ is the material constant appearing in the strain-energy function (7.57), which has been used in this calculation with $n=12$ and $\mu_{1}^{*} \equiv \mu_{1} / \mu_{3}=2$. The axial stretch $\lambda_{z 0}$ has been set to 1.2 and the aspect ratio to $B / A=1.2$. The general qualitative character of the results in Fig. 9.3 is not significantly affected by using different values of the material parameters over quite a large range of values.

We observe that the residual radial stress is quite small and is negative except at the boundaries (where it vanishes). The circumferential stress is compressive at the inner boundary and tensile at the outer boundary, as anticipated on the basis of the opening-angle experiment. It is also much larger in magnitude than the radial stress.

## Chapter 10

## Boundary-value problems: some exact solutions

As mentioned earlier, there are relatively few exact solutions known for boundary-value problems in nonlinear elasticity when the constraint of incompressibility is not imposed. Here we provide a method of generating forms of strain-energy function for which such solutions can be found. It is based on the idea of considering the possibility that isochoric deformations can be maintained in a compressible material. For an incompressible material, the incompressibility constraint is compensated for by including an additional variable - the Lagrange multiplier $p$ - and the governing equations and boundary conditions determine this function. By contrast, if the deformation is assumed to be isochoric in a compressible material there is no such compensation and the equations, in general, over-determine the deformation in such a way that they are incompatible. However, in some problems the equations can be made compatible if suitable restrictions are placed on the form of strain-energy function. In this chapter we illustrate this procedure for a representative problem, namely azimuthal shear of a circular cylindrical tube.

### 10.1. The azimuthal shear problem

The discussion in this chapter follows closely that in Jiang and Ogden [11], to which we refer for more details. We consider a compressible nonlinearly elastic thick-walled circular cylindrical tube whose cross-section in its natural
(unstressed) configuration is defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
0<A \leq R \leq B, \quad 0 \leq \Theta \leq 2 \pi \tag{10.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $(R, \Theta)$ are polar coordinates. Attention is restricted to plane deformations in which there is no extension along the axis of the cylinder and the deformation of a cross-section is independent of the axial coordinate, $Z$ say. To maintain plane-strain conditions appropriate axial loading is required on the ends of the tube, but this will not be needed explicitly for our purposes here.

An azimuthal shear deformation is defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
r=r(R), \quad \theta=\Theta+g(R), \quad z=Z \tag{10.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $(r, \theta, z)$ are cylindrical polar coordinates associated with the deformed configuration.

We take the boundary conditions as

$$
\begin{equation*}
a \equiv r(A)=A, \quad b \equiv r(B)=B, \quad g(A)=0, \quad g(B)=\psi \tag{10.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

in the cross-section of the tube, $\psi$ being the angle through which the boundary $R=B$ is rotated.

Referred to cylindrical polar coordinates the deformation gradient tensor F has components

$$
\mathrm{F}=\left[\begin{array}{ccc}
r^{\prime} & 0 & 0  \tag{10.4}\\
r g^{\prime} & r / R & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right]
$$

where the prime indicates differentiation with respect to $R$, and its inverse is

$$
\mathrm{F}^{-1}=\left[\begin{array}{ccc}
1 / r^{\prime} & 0 & 0  \tag{10.5}\\
-R g^{\prime} / r^{\prime} & R / r & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right]
$$

The principal invariants $I_{1}, I_{2}, I_{3}$ of the deformation tensor $\mathbf{B}=\mathbf{F F}^{T}$ are given by

$$
\begin{align*}
& I_{1}=r^{\prime 2}+r^{2} g^{\prime 2}+r^{2} / R^{2}+1 \\
& I_{2}=r^{2} g^{\prime 2}+r^{2} / R^{2}+{r^{\prime}}^{2}+r^{2} r^{2} / R^{2} \\
& I_{3}=r^{2}{r^{\prime}}^{2} / R^{2} \tag{10.6}
\end{align*}
$$

and it follows immediately that

$$
\begin{equation*}
I_{2}=I_{1}+I_{3}-1 . \tag{10.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that (10.7) holds in general for plane strain deformations, not only for the deformation (10.2).

With the restriction to plane strain only two of the invariants $I_{1}, I_{2}, I_{3}$ are independent, and the strain energy $\bar{W}\left(I_{1}, I_{2}, I_{3}\right)$ per unit reference volume of a compressible isotropic elastic material may then be regarded as a function of two invariants. Accordingly, we define $\hat{W}\left(I_{1}, I_{3}\right)$ by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{W}\left(I_{1}, I_{3}\right)=\bar{W}\left(I_{1}, I_{1}+I_{3}-1, I_{3}\right) \tag{10.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

when (10.7) holds identically. Note that $\hat{W}$ here is different from that used earlier.

The in-plane restriction of the nominal stress tensor $\mathbf{S}$ is then calculated as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{S}=\frac{\partial \hat{W}}{\partial \mathbf{A}}=2 \hat{W}_{1} \mathbf{A}^{T}+2 I_{3} \hat{W}_{3} \mathbf{A}^{-1} \tag{10.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\hat{W}_{1}=\partial \hat{W} / \partial I_{1}, \hat{W}_{3}=\partial \hat{W} / \partial I_{3}$ and $\mathbf{A}$ is the in-plane restriction of $\mathbf{F}$, with components given by the leading $2 \times 2$ matrix in (10.4) and similarly for $\mathbf{F}^{-1}$. The corresponding (in-plane) Cauchy stress tensor $\boldsymbol{\sigma}=I_{3}^{-1 / 2} \mathbf{A S}$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{\sigma}=2 I_{3}^{-1 / 2} \hat{W}_{1} \mathbf{B}+2 I_{3}^{1 / 2} \hat{W}_{3} \mathbf{I}, \tag{10.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathbf{I}$ is the (in-plane) identity tensor and $\mathbf{B}$ is now taken as $\mathbf{A A}^{T}$.
For the strain energy and the stress to vanish in the natural configuration and for compatibility with the classical (linear) theory of isotropic elasticity we require

$$
\begin{align*}
& \hat{W}(3,1)=0, \quad \hat{W}_{1}(3,1)+\hat{W}_{3}(3,1)=0, \\
& \hat{W}_{1}(3,1)=-\hat{W}_{3}(3,1)=\frac{1}{2} \mu, \tag{10.11}
\end{align*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{W}_{11}(3,1)+2 \hat{W}_{13}(3,1)+\hat{W}_{33}(3,1)=\frac{1}{4} \kappa+\frac{1}{3} \mu, \tag{10.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mu$ is the shear modulus and $\kappa$ the bulk modulus in the natural configuration.

After substitution of the components of $\mathbf{S}$ from (10.9) with (10.4) and (10.5) into the (in-plane) equilibrium equations $\operatorname{Div} \mathbf{S}=\mathbf{0}$ two equations are obtained. The radial equation may be written

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d}{d R}\left(R r^{\prime} \hat{W}_{1}\right)+r \frac{d}{d R}\left(\frac{r r^{\prime}}{R} \hat{W}_{3}\right)-\frac{r}{R} \hat{W}_{1}-r R g^{\prime 2} \hat{W}_{1}=0 \tag{10.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

while, after integration, the azimuthal equation yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
r R S_{R \theta} \equiv r^{2} \sigma_{r \theta}=2 r^{2} R g^{\prime} \hat{W}_{1}=b^{2} \tau \tag{10.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the constant $\tau$ is the value of the azimuthal shear stress $\sigma_{r \theta}$ (or $S_{R \theta}$ ) at the outer boundary $r=b=B$.

### 10.2. Pure azimuthal shear

Pure azimuthal shear is the isochoric specialization of the deformation (10.2) corresponding to $r=R$. With this specialization, equations (10.6) reduce to

$$
\begin{equation*}
I_{2}=I_{1}=3+r^{2} g^{\prime 2}, \quad I_{3}=1, \tag{10.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

and, locally, the deformation is a simple shear with amount of shear $r g^{\prime}$, the azimuthal direction being the direction of shear.

When the restrictions (10.15) apply equations (10.13) and (10.14) reduce to

$$
\begin{gather*}
\frac{d}{d r}\left(\hat{W}_{1}+\hat{W}_{3}\right)-r g^{\prime 2} \hat{W}_{1}=0,  \tag{10.16}\\
2 r^{3} g^{\prime} \hat{W}_{1}=b^{2} \tau \tag{10.17}
\end{gather*}
$$

Let $\gamma=r g^{\prime}$ denote the amount of shear. Then $\gamma>0$ is associated with $\tau>0$ (shearing in the positive $\theta$ direction with $g(r)>0$ for $r>a$ ) and $\gamma<0$ corresponds to $\tau<0$. Thus, we now have $I_{1}=3+\gamma^{2}$, as in the case of simple shear discussed in Section 5.6.1. By defining

$$
\begin{equation*}
w(\gamma)=\hat{W}\left(3+\gamma^{2}, 1\right), \tag{10.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

we can rewrite (10.17) as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma_{r \theta} \equiv w^{\prime}(\gamma)=b^{2} \tau / r^{2} \tag{10.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $w^{\prime}(\gamma)>0(<0)$ for $\gamma>0(<0)$.

Increasing shear $\gamma$ corresponds to increasing shearing stress $\sigma_{r \theta}$ provided

$$
\begin{equation*}
w^{\prime \prime}(\gamma)>0, \tag{10.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

and we therefore impose (10.20) for all $\gamma$. The monotonicity of $w^{\prime}(\gamma)$ implied by (10.20) ensures that, in principle, (10.19) can be inverted to give $\gamma\left(=r g^{\prime}\right)$ uniquely as a function of $r$ and hence $g$ is determined by integration. Note that from (10.19) and (10.20) it follows that $r g^{\prime \prime}+g^{\prime}<0(>0)$ when $\gamma>$ $0(<0)$.
$\rightarrow$ From (10.18)-(10.20) it is easy to show that the above requirements on $w^{\prime}(\gamma)$ and $w^{\prime \prime}(\gamma)$ are equivalent to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{W}_{1}\left(I_{1}, 1\right)>0, \quad 2\left(I_{1}-3\right) \hat{W}_{11}\left(I_{1}, 1\right)+\hat{W}_{1}\left(I_{1}, 1\right)>0 . \tag{10.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

With these conditions holding we may replace $r$ by $I_{1}$ as the independent variable in (10.16) by using (10.15) and (10.17). First, we rewrite (10.16) as

$$
r \frac{d}{d r}\left(\hat{W}_{1}+\hat{W}_{3}\right)=\left(I_{1}-3\right) \hat{W}_{1}
$$

and then differentiate (10.17) with respect to $r$ and use (10.17) again to obtain

$$
r \frac{d}{d r}\left(\sqrt{I_{1}-3} \hat{W}_{1}\right)=-2 \sqrt{I_{1}-3} \hat{W}_{1} .
$$

On elimination of differentiation with respect to $r$ in favour of that with respect to $I_{1}$ the combination of the latter two equations leads to the key condition

$$
\begin{equation*}
2\left(I_{1}-1\right) \hat{W}_{11}\left(I_{1}, 1\right)+4 \hat{W}_{13}\left(I_{1}, 1\right)+\hat{W}_{1}\left(I_{1}, 1\right)=0 \tag{10.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

on the strain-energy function.
It is emphasized that equations (10.21) and (10.22) together are sufficient conditions for the strain-energy function $\hat{W}$ to admit a pure azimuthal shear deformation for all $\tau$ (provided $w^{\prime}(\gamma) \rightarrow \infty$ as $\left.\gamma \rightarrow \infty\right)$. On the other hand, whilst (10.22) is also a necessary condition the inequality $(10.21)_{2}$ is not in general necessary since the latter can be relaxed, if need be, to allow for shear softening effects in which the shear stress exhibits a maximum as a function of $\gamma$ (with consequent loss of ellipticity). In these circumstances non-uniqueness of solution arises. Existence and uniqueness of solution is guaranteed if (10.20) holds. To ensure existence of solution for all $\tau$ when the strain-energy satisfies (10.22) and when (10.20) does not hold, the (weaker)
requirement is that $w^{\prime}(\gamma)$ be continuous and unbounded. If the latter has a finite global maximum then there will be values of $\tau$ for which solutions do not exist, and this point is illustrated by one of the examples considered below.

We may integrate (10.22) with respect to $I_{1}$ to obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
2\left(I_{1}-1\right) \hat{W}_{1}\left(I_{1}, 1\right)+4 \hat{W}_{3}\left(I_{1}, 1\right)-\hat{W}\left(I_{1}, 1\right)=0 \tag{10.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the conditions (10.11) have been used to eliminate the constant of integration. Thus, (10.23) is equivalent to but, since it only involves first derivatives, slightly simpler than (10.22).

In the following section we apply (10.23) to a particular class of strainenergy functions. Together with the inequalities (10.21) equation (10.23) then determines a subclass of materials for which the pure azimuthal shear deformation is possible. We then use (10.17) to determine $g(r)$ subject to the boundary conditions (10.3) for several members of the subclass.

### 10.3. Solutions for a class of strain-energy functions

We now consider the class of strain-energy function for which $\hat{W}$ is given in the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{W}\left(I_{1}, I_{3}\right)=f\left(I_{1}\right) h_{1}\left(I_{3}\right)+h_{2}\left(I_{3}\right), \tag{10.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $f\left(I_{1}\right)$ is to be determined using (10.23) while the functions $h_{1}, h_{2}$ are to be consistent with (10.11) and (10.12). The motivation for considering (10.24) is that for strain-energy functions considered previously for which pure azimuthal shear solutions have been found $W\left(I_{1}, I_{2}, I_{3}\right)$ is linear in $I_{1}$ and $I_{2}$ and hence, by (10.7), $\hat{W}\left(I_{1}, I_{3}\right)$ is linear in $I_{1}$, while $h_{1}\left(I_{3}\right), h_{2}\left(I_{3}\right)$ have very specific forms. Thus, (10.24) provides a more general class of strainenergy functions for which pure azimuthal shear might be possible.

Without loss of generality we take $h_{1}(1)=1$, and we define the constant $k$ by

$$
\begin{equation*}
2 k=1-4 h_{1}^{\prime}(1) \tag{10.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then, on use of (10.24), equations (10.11) and (10.12) give

$$
\begin{gather*}
f(3)+h_{2}(1)=0, \quad f^{\prime}(3)=\frac{1}{2} \mu, \quad f(3) h_{1}^{\prime}(1)+h_{2}^{\prime}(1)=-\frac{1}{2} \mu,  \tag{10.26}\\
f^{\prime \prime}(3)+\mu h_{1}^{\prime}(1)+f(3) h_{1}^{\prime \prime}(1)+h_{2}^{\prime \prime}(1)=\frac{1}{4} \kappa+\frac{1}{3} \mu \tag{10.27}
\end{gather*}
$$

while (10.23) yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
2\left(I_{1}-1\right) f^{\prime}\left(I_{1}\right)-2 k f\left(I_{1}\right)+4 h_{2}^{\prime}(1)-h_{2}(1)=0 \tag{10.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

Provided $k \neq 0$ we may, without loss of generality, set

$$
\begin{equation*}
4 h_{2}^{\prime}(1)-h_{2}(1)=0 \tag{10.29}
\end{equation*}
$$

since the constant particular solution of (10.28) for $f\left(I_{1}\right)$ times $h_{1}\left(I_{3}\right)$ may be absorbed into $h_{2}\left(I_{3}\right)$.

It then follows that, in order to satisfy (10.28) and (10.26) $)_{1}, f\left(I_{1}\right)$ must have the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
f\left(I_{1}\right)=\frac{\mu}{2^{k} k}\left(I_{1}-1\right)^{k} \tag{10.30}
\end{equation*}
$$

from which the values of $f(3), f^{\prime \prime}(3)$ appearing in (10.26) and (10.27) may be read off. From (10.26), (10.29) and (10.27) we then have

$$
\begin{gather*}
h_{2}(1)=-\mu / k, \quad h_{2}^{\prime}(1)=-\mu / 4 k  \tag{10.31}\\
h_{2}^{\prime \prime}(1)+\frac{\mu}{k} h_{1}^{\prime \prime}(1)=\frac{1}{4} \kappa+\frac{1}{3} \mu+\frac{1}{4} \mu k \tag{10.32}
\end{gather*}
$$

in terms of the parameter $k$.
Equation (10.19) may now be written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
w^{\prime}(\gamma) \equiv \mu 2^{1-k} \gamma\left(2+\gamma^{2}\right)^{k-1}=b^{2} \tau / r^{2} \tag{10.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

It is easy to show that $(10.20)$ holds for all $\gamma$ if and only if

$$
\begin{equation*}
k \geq \frac{1}{2} \tag{10.34}
\end{equation*}
$$

Here we restrict attention to values of $k$ satisfying (10.34) so that $\gamma$ is determined uniquely as a function of $r$. Note that in the limiting case $k=1 / 2$, $w^{\prime}(\gamma) \rightarrow \mu \sqrt{2}$ as $\gamma \rightarrow \infty$, which puts an upper bound on admissible values of $\tau$ in this case. In what follows we obtain solutions for $g(r)$ from (10.33) with $\gamma=r g^{\prime}(r)$ for specific values of $k$.

Case (i): $k=1 / 2$. With $h_{1}^{\prime}(1)=0$ this case yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{W}\left(I_{1}, I_{3}\right)=\sqrt{2} \mu\left(I_{1}-1\right)^{1 / 2} h_{1}\left(I_{3}\right)+h_{2}\left(I_{3}\right) \tag{10.35}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
h_{2}(1)=-2 \mu, \quad h_{2}^{\prime}(1)=-\frac{1}{2} \mu, \quad h_{2}^{\prime \prime}(1)+2 \mu h_{1}^{\prime \prime}(1)=\frac{1}{4} \kappa+\frac{11 \mu}{24} \tag{10.36}
\end{equation*}
$$

Equation (10.33) simplifies to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\gamma\left(2+\gamma^{2}\right)^{-1 / 2}=b^{2} s / r^{2} \tag{10.37}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the notation

$$
\begin{equation*}
s=\tau / \mu \sqrt{2} \tag{10.38}
\end{equation*}
$$

is introduced as a dimensionless measure of the shearing stress on $r=b$.
It is easily shown that the solution of $(10.37)$ for $g(r)$ satisfying the boundary conditions (10.3) is

$$
\begin{equation*}
g(r)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left[\sin ^{-1}(\eta s)-\sin ^{-1}\left(\frac{b^{2} s}{r^{2}}\right)\right] \tag{10.39}
\end{equation*}
$$

and hence

$$
\begin{equation*}
\psi \equiv g(b)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left[\sin ^{-1}(\eta s)-\sin ^{-1} s\right] \tag{10.40}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\eta=b^{2} / a^{2}$. We note that (10.40) has limited validity in that it yields a real value of $\psi$ only if $|s| \leq \eta^{-1}$, and hence an upper bound is placed on the permissible values of the shearing stress, i.e.

$$
\begin{equation*}
|\tau| \leq \sqrt{2} \mu a^{2} / b^{2} \tag{10.41}
\end{equation*}
$$

In this sense the applicability of the strain-energy function (10.35) is limited.

Case (ii): $k=1$. In this case we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{W}\left(I_{1}, I_{3}\right)=\frac{1}{2} \mu\left(I_{1}-1\right) h_{1}\left(I_{3}\right)+h_{2}\left(I_{3}\right) \tag{10.42}
\end{equation*}
$$

with

$$
\begin{gather*}
h_{1}^{\prime}(1)=-\frac{1}{4}, \quad h_{2}(1)=-\mu, \quad h_{2}^{\prime}(1)=-\frac{1}{4} \mu  \tag{10.43}\\
\mu h_{1}^{\prime \prime}(1)+h_{2}^{\prime \prime}(1)=\frac{1}{4} \kappa+\frac{7 \mu}{12} \tag{10.44}
\end{gather*}
$$

Equation (10.33) yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mu \gamma=b^{2} \tau / r^{2} \tag{10.45}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the solution for $g(r)$ satisfying (10.3) is then simply

$$
\begin{equation*}
g(r)=\frac{s}{\sqrt{2}}\left(\eta-\frac{b^{2}}{r^{2}}\right) \tag{10.46}
\end{equation*}
$$

so that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\psi \equiv g(b)=\frac{s}{\sqrt{2}}(\eta-1) \tag{10.47}
\end{equation*}
$$

$s$ again being defined by (10.38).
Equation (10.47) is precisely the result obtained in the incompressible theory for the neo-Hookean (or Mooney-Rivlin) form of strain-energy function, $\psi$ being linear in $s$. Equation (10.42) is a compressible version of the neo-Hookean strain-energy for plane deformations. The solution (10.46) is valid for any functions $h_{1}\left(I_{3}\right), h_{2}\left(I_{3}\right)$ satisfying $h_{1}(1)=1$ and the conditions (10.43) and (10.44).

Case (iii): $k=3 / 2$. Here we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{W}\left(I_{1}, I_{3}\right)=\frac{\mu}{3 \sqrt{2}}\left(I_{1}-1\right)^{3 / 2} h_{1}\left(I_{3}\right)+h_{2}\left(I_{3}\right) \tag{10.48}
\end{equation*}
$$

with (10.31) and (10.32) appropriately specialized, and (10.33) becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
\gamma\left(2+\gamma^{2}\right)^{1 / 2}=2 b^{2} s / r^{2} \tag{10.49}
\end{equation*}
$$

Equation (10.49) can be solved to give

$$
\begin{equation*}
g(r)=\sqrt{2} m(a)-\sqrt{2} m(r)+\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \tan ^{-1} m(r)-\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \tan ^{-1} m(a) \tag{10.50}
\end{equation*}
$$



Figure 10.1. Plot of the dimensionless shear stress $s$ against $\psi \sqrt{2}$ for $\eta=\sqrt{2}$ and the following values of $k$ : (a) $1 / 2$, (b) $3 / 4$, (c) 1 , (d) $3 / 2$.
where $m(r)$ is defined as

$$
\begin{equation*}
m(r)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left[\left(1+\frac{4 b^{4} s^{2}}{r^{4}}\right)^{1 / 2}-1\right]^{1 / 2} . \tag{10.51}
\end{equation*}
$$

For illustration, numerical results in which $s$ is plotted against $\psi \sqrt{2}$ are shown in Fig. 10.1 for the above three cases for a representative value of $\eta=\sqrt{2}$ together with the corresponding result for $k=3 / 4$.

### 10.4. Strain-energy functions in terms of $i_{1}, i_{2}, i_{3}$

We now consider an alternative representation for the strain-energy function $W$ in terms of the principal invariants $i_{1}, i_{2}, i_{3}$ of the stretch tensor $\mathbf{V}$. In general, $I_{1}, I_{2}, I_{3}$ are given in terms of $i_{1}, i_{2}, i_{3}$ by

$$
\begin{equation*}
I_{1}=i_{1}^{2}-2 i_{2}, \quad I_{2}=i_{2}^{2}-2 i_{1} i_{3}, \quad I_{3}=i_{3}^{2} \tag{10.52}
\end{equation*}
$$

but for the plane deformation considered here these may be reduced using (10.7) and, analogously to (10.7), we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
i_{2}=i_{1}+i_{3}-1 . \tag{10.53}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus, we may write

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{W}\left(I_{1}, I_{3}\right)=\tilde{W}\left(i_{1}, i_{3}\right), \tag{10.54}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\tilde{W}$ satisfies

$$
\begin{gather*}
\tilde{W}(3,1)=0, \quad \tilde{W}_{1}(3,1)=-\tilde{W}_{3}(3,1)=2 \mu  \tag{10.55}\\
\tilde{W}_{11}(3,1)+2 \tilde{W}_{13}(3,1)+\tilde{W}_{33}(3,1)=\kappa+\frac{4}{3} \mu \tag{10.56}
\end{gather*}
$$

In terms of $\tilde{W}$ it is easy to show by using (10.52) and (10.53) that the condition (10.23) becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(i_{1}-1\right) \tilde{W}_{1}\left(i_{1}, 1\right)+2 \tilde{W}_{3}\left(i_{1}, 1\right)-\tilde{W}\left(i_{1}, 1\right)=0 . \tag{10.57}
\end{equation*}
$$

This prompts consideration of the class of strain-energy functions defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tilde{W}=\tilde{f}\left(i_{1}\right) \tilde{h}_{1}\left(i_{3}\right)+\tilde{h}_{2}\left(i_{3}\right) \tag{10.58}
\end{equation*}
$$

in parallel with (10.24).

Following the procedure used in Section 10.3 we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tilde{f}\left(i_{1}\right)=\frac{4 \mu}{2^{\tilde{k} \tilde{k}}}\left(i_{1}-1\right)^{\tilde{k}} \tag{10.59}
\end{equation*}
$$

with

$$
\begin{align*}
& \tilde{h}_{1}(1)=1, \quad \tilde{h}_{1}^{\prime}(1)=\frac{1}{2}(1-\tilde{k}),  \tag{10.60}\\
& \tilde{h}_{2}(1)=-\frac{4 \mu}{\tilde{k}}, \quad \tilde{h}_{2}^{\prime}(1)=-\frac{2 \mu}{\tilde{k}},  \tag{10.61}\\
& -\frac{4 \mu}{\tilde{k}} \tilde{h}_{1}^{\prime \prime}(1)+\tilde{h}_{2}^{\prime \prime}(1)=\kappa+\frac{4}{3} \mu, \tag{10.62}
\end{align*}
$$

where $(10.60)_{2}$ defines the parameter $\tilde{k}$.
The equilibrium equation (10.19) becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
w^{\prime}(\gamma) \equiv \mu 2^{2-\tilde{k}} \gamma\left(4+\gamma^{2}\right)^{(\tilde{k}-2) / 2}=b^{2} \tau / r^{2} \tag{10.63}
\end{equation*}
$$

and (10.20) is satisfied for all $\gamma$ if and only if

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tilde{k} \geq 1 \tag{10.64}
\end{equation*}
$$

If $\tilde{k}=2$ equation (10.63) yields, apart from differences in notation, the same solution as in Case (ii) in Section 10.3, and (10.24) and (10.58) represent the same (compressible neo-Hookean) form of strain-energy function.

If $\tilde{k}=1$ then ( 10.58 ) becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tilde{W}\left(i_{1}, i_{3}\right)=2 \mu\left(i_{1}-1\right) \tilde{h}_{1}\left(i_{3}\right)+\tilde{h}_{2}\left(i_{3}\right), \tag{10.65}
\end{equation*}
$$

with (10.60)-(10.62) appropriately specialized, and (10.63) reduces to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\gamma\left(4+\gamma^{2}\right)^{-1 / 2}=b^{2} s / \sqrt{2} r^{2} \tag{10.66}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $s$ is again defined by (10.38).
Equation (10.66) is solved for $g(r)$ using $\gamma=r g^{\prime}(r)$ to give

$$
\begin{equation*}
g(r)=\sin ^{-1}\left(\frac{\eta s}{\sqrt{2}}\right)-\sin ^{-1}\left(\frac{b^{2} s}{\sqrt{2} r^{2}}\right) \tag{10.67}
\end{equation*}
$$

and the twist-shearing stress relationship is therefore

$$
\begin{equation*}
\psi \equiv g(b)=\sin ^{-1}\left(\frac{\eta s}{\sqrt{2}}\right)-\sin ^{-1}\left(\frac{s}{\sqrt{2}}\right) \tag{10.68}
\end{equation*}
$$

Comparison of (10.66) with (10.37) shows that (10.67) may be obtained from (10.39) by making the transformations $g \rightarrow g / \sqrt{2}, s \rightarrow s / \sqrt{2}$ in (10.39).

Equation (10.67) should be compared with (10.39) arising in Case (i) in Section 10.3. As with (10.39) the solution (10.67) is restricted to a finite range of values of $s$, in this case $|s| \leq \sqrt{2} \eta^{-1}$.

Solutions for certain other values of $\tilde{k}$ may also be obtained explicitly. It suffices here to mention briefly one such solution.

For $\tilde{k}=3$ we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tilde{f}\left(i_{1}\right)=\frac{1}{6} \mu\left(i_{1}-1\right)^{3}, \tag{10.69}
\end{equation*}
$$

and (10.19) becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
\gamma\left(4+\gamma^{2}\right)^{1 / 2}=2 \sqrt{2} s b^{2} / r^{2} \tag{10.70}
\end{equation*}
$$

Again the transformations $g \rightarrow g / \sqrt{2}, s \rightarrow s / \sqrt{2}$ enable the solution of (10.70) to be read off from (10.50) with (10.51). More generally, the transformations $k \rightarrow \tilde{k} / 2, \gamma \rightarrow \gamma / \sqrt{2}, \tau \rightarrow \tau / \sqrt{2}$ take (10.33) into (10.63), thus establishing a direct relationship between the solutions of (10.33) and (10.63) for all $k$ in the considered range of values. Curves of $s$ against $\psi \sqrt{2}$ for these strain energy functions are very similar to those shown in Fig. 10.1 but coincide only for $\tilde{k}=2$, which corresponds to $k=1$. Further details are given by Jiang and Ogden [11].

### 10.5. Use of the stretches

In Sections 10.3 and 10.4 we have obtained solutions by considering two distinct pairs of deformation invariants, namely (in plane strain) ( $I_{1}, I_{3}$ ) and $\left(i_{1}, i_{3}\right)$. Further solutions may be obtained by using different pairs of invariants or the stretches, $\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}$ say, with $\lambda_{3}=1$. In the latter case we note that (10.23), or equivalently (10.57), may be expressed in terms of the stretches to give

$$
\begin{equation*}
\lambda_{1} \frac{\partial W}{\partial \lambda_{1}}+\lambda_{2} \frac{\partial W}{\partial \lambda_{2}}-W=0 \tag{10.71}
\end{equation*}
$$

evaluated for $\lambda_{1} \lambda_{2}=1$.
We illustrate this by considering a strain energy of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
W=f\left(I^{(\alpha)}\right) h_{1}(J)+f\left(I^{(-\alpha)}\right) h_{2}(J)+h_{3}(J), \tag{10.72}
\end{equation*}
$$

where

$$
\begin{equation*}
I^{(\alpha)}=\lambda_{1}^{(\alpha)}+\lambda_{2}^{(\alpha)}+\lambda_{3}^{(\alpha)}, \quad J=\lambda_{1} \lambda_{2} \lambda_{3}, \tag{10.73}
\end{equation*}
$$

as discussed by Kirkinis and Ogden [13]. It follows that for $J=1$ with $\lambda_{3}=1$ we have $I^{(-\alpha)}=I^{(\alpha)}$. By taking $h_{1}(1)=h_{2}(1)$ it is then easy to show that (10.71) is satisfied for arbitrary functions $f$ and arbitrary values of $\alpha$ provided the mild restrictions

$$
\begin{equation*}
h_{1}^{\prime}(1)+h_{2}^{\prime}(1)=1, \quad 2 h_{3}^{\prime}(1)=h_{3}(1) \tag{10.74}
\end{equation*}
$$

are imposed.
Then,

$$
\begin{equation*}
w(\gamma)=2 f(I)+h_{3}(1), \quad 2 f(3)+h_{3}(1)=0, \tag{10.75}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $I=I^{(\alpha)}=I^{(-\alpha)}=\lambda^{\alpha}+\lambda^{\alpha}+1, \gamma=\lambda-\lambda^{-1}$ and we have set $\lambda=\lambda_{1}, \lambda_{2}=\lambda^{-1}$. Equation (10.19) now gives

$$
\begin{equation*}
w^{\prime}(\gamma) \equiv 2 \alpha f^{\prime}(I) \frac{\lambda^{\alpha}-\lambda^{-\alpha}}{\lambda+\lambda^{-1}}=\frac{\tau b^{2}}{r^{2}} . \tag{10.76}
\end{equation*}
$$

For particular choices of $\alpha$ and the function $f$ this equation can be solved in a similar way to Sections 10.3 and 10.4. For further details see [13].

### 10.6. The incompressible problem

Results for incompressible materials may be deduced from those for pure azimuthal shear in a compressible material by considering the incompressible material to have strain-energy function (in plane strain), $\hat{W}_{\text {inc }}$ say, defined by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{W}_{\mathrm{inc}}\left(I_{1}\right)=\hat{W}\left(I_{1}, 1\right), \tag{10.77}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\hat{W}\left(I_{1}, I_{3}\right)$ is defined by (10.8).
Correspondingly, in terms of the amount of shear $\gamma$, we define $w_{\text {inc }}(\gamma)$ by

$$
\begin{equation*}
w_{\mathrm{inc}}(\gamma)=\hat{W}_{\mathrm{inc}}\left(3+\gamma^{2}\right) . \tag{10.78}
\end{equation*}
$$

Then, equation (10.19), which serves to determine $\gamma$, is unchanged but now written

$$
\begin{equation*}
w_{\text {inc }}^{\prime}(\gamma)=b^{2} \tau / r^{2} . \tag{10.79}
\end{equation*}
$$

For an incompressible material the Cauchy stress tensor $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$ in (10.10) is replaced by the plane-strain specialization of (5.7), namely

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{\sigma}=2 \hat{W}_{\text {inc }}^{\prime}\left(I_{1}\right) \mathbf{B}-p \mathbf{I}, \tag{10.80}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $p$ is the arbitrary hydrostatic pressure associated with the incompressibility constraint. The radial equation of equilibrium may be written

$$
\begin{equation*}
r \frac{d \sigma_{r r}}{d r}=\sigma_{\theta \theta}-\sigma_{r r} \equiv \gamma w_{\mathrm{inc}}^{\prime}(\gamma) . \tag{10.81}
\end{equation*}
$$

The role of this equation in the incompressible theory is different from that of its counterpart (10.16) in the compressible theory. For any given incompressible isotropic strain-energy function equation (10.81) serves to determine $\sigma_{r r}$ (or, equivalently, $p$ ) once $\gamma$ is found using (10.79).

Equations (10.79) and (10.81) involve no restriction on the strain-energy function other than that imposed by the incompressibility constraint. But, by adapting the strain-energy functions discussed in Sections 10.3 and 10.4 to the incompressible situation the solutions obtained there are seen to be equally valid for incompressible materials. For example, by taking

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{W}_{\text {inc }}\left(I_{1}\right)=f\left(I_{1}\right)-f(3) \tag{10.82}
\end{equation*}
$$

with $f\left(I_{1}\right)$ given by (10.30) we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
w_{\mathrm{inc}}=\frac{\mu}{2^{k} k}\left[\left(2+\gamma^{2}\right)^{k}-2^{k}\right] . \tag{10.83}
\end{equation*}
$$

Similarly, in view of the connection $I_{1}=i_{1}^{2}-2 i_{1}$ obtained from (10.52) and (10.53) with $i_{3}=1$, we may consider

$$
\begin{equation*}
\hat{W}_{\mathrm{inc}}\left(I_{1}\right)=\tilde{f}\left(i_{1}\right)-\tilde{f}(3) \tag{10.84}
\end{equation*}
$$

with (10.59) and obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
w_{\text {inc }}=\frac{4 \mu}{2^{\tilde{k} \tilde{k}}}\left[\left(4+\gamma^{2}\right)^{\tilde{k} / 2}-2^{\tilde{k}}\right] . \tag{10.85}
\end{equation*}
$$

The solutions given in Sections 10.3 and 10.4 for specific values of $k$ and $\tilde{k}$ can now be applied in the incompressible situation and equation (10.81) may be used to calculate the complete stress distribution.

## Bibliography

1. P. Chadwick, Continuum Mechanics, Dover Publications, New York 1999.
2. P.G. Ciarlet, Mathematical Elasticity Vol. 1: Three-dimensional Elasticity, North Holland, Amsterdam 1988.
3. B.D. Coleman and W. Noll, Material symmetry and thermostatic inequalities in finite elastic deformations, Archive for rational Mechanics and Analysis, Vol.15, pp.87-111, 1964.
4. Y.B. Fu and R.W. Ogden (Eds.), Nonlinear Elasticity: Theory and Applications, University Press, Cambridge 2001.
5. D.M. Haughton and R.W. Ogden, Bifurcation of inflated circular cylinders of elastic material under axial loading I. Membrane theory for thin-walled tubes, Journal of the Mechanics and Physics of Solids, Vol.27, pp.179-212, 1979.
6. D.M. Haughton and R.W. Ogden, Bifurcation of inflated circular cylinders of elastic material under axial loading II. Exact theory for thick-walled tubes, Journal of the Mechanics and Physics of Solids, Vol.27, pp.489-512, 1979.
7. A. Hoger, On the residual stress possible in an elastic body with material symmetry, Archive for Rational Mechanics and Analysis, Vol.88, pp.271-290, 1985.
8. G.A. Holzapfel, Nonlinear Solid Mechanics, John Wiley \& Sons, Chichester 2000.
9. G.A. Holzapfel, T.C Gasser and R.W. Ogden, A new constitutive framework for arterial wall mechanics and a comparative study of material models, Journal of Elasticity, Vol.61, pp.1-48, 2000.
10. G.A. Holzapfel and R.W. Ogden (Eds.), Biomechanics of Soft Tissue in Cardiovascular Systems, CISM Courses and Lectures, Vol.441, Springer, Wien 2003.
11. X. Jiang and R.W. Ogden, On azimuthal shear of a circular cylindrical tube of compressible elastic material, Quarterly Journal of Mechanics and Applied Mathematics, Vol.51, pp.143-158, 1998.
12. D.F. Jones and L.R.G. Treloar, The properties of rubber in pure homogeneous strain, Journal of Physics D, Applied Physics, Vol.8, pp.1285-1304.
13. E. Kirkinis and R.W. Ogden, On helical shear of a compressible elastic circular cylindrical tube, Quarterly Journal of Mechanics and Applied Mathematics, to appear.
14. A.I. Murdoch, Objectivity in classical continuum physics: a rationale for discarding the 'principle of invariance under superposed rigid body motions' in favour of purely objective considerations, manuscript to be published 2003.
15. R.W. Ogden, Large deformation isotropic elasticity I: on the correlation of theory and experiment for incompressible rubberlike solids, Proceedings of the Royal Society of London A, Vol.326, pp.565-584, 1972.
16. R.W. Ogden, Elastic deformation of rubberlike solids, in: Mechanics of Solids, The Rodney Hill 60th Anniversary Volume. (H.G. Hopkins and M.J. Sewell, Eds.), pp.499-537, Pergamon Press, Oxford 1982.
17. R.W. Ogden, Recent advances in the phenomenological theory of rubber elasticity, Rubber Chemistry and Technology, Vol.59, pp.361-383, 1986.
18. R.W. Ogden, Non-linear Elastic Deformations, Dover Publications, New York 1997.
19. R.W. Ogden and C.A.J. Schulze-Bauer, Phenomenological and structural aspects of the mechanical response of arteries, in: Proceedings of the ASME Mechanics in Biology Symposium, (J. Casey and G. Bao, Eds.), pp.125-140, ASME AMD-Vol. 242/BED-Vol. 46, ASME, New York 2000.
20. G. Saccomandi and R.W. Ogden (Eds.), Mechanics and Thermomechanics of Rubberlike Solids, CISM Courses and Lectures, Vol.452, Springer, Wien 2003, to appear.
21. A.J.M. Spencer, Deformations of Fibre-reinforced Materials, University Press, Oxford 1972.
22. A.J.M. Spencer, Constitutive theory for strongly anisotropic solids, in: Continuum Theory of the Mechanics of Fibre-reinforced Composites, (A.J.M. Spencer, Ed.), pp.1-32, CISM Courses and Lectures, no. 282, Springer, Wien 1984.
23. D.J. Steigmann, Invariants of the stretch tensors and their application to finite elasticity theory, Mathematics and Mechanics of Solids, Vol.7, pp.393404, 2002.
24. L.R.G. Treloar, Stress-strain data for vulcanized rubber under various types of deformation, Transactions of the Faraday Society, Vol.40, pp.59-70, 1944.
